



SOFTBALL AUSTRALIA OFFICIAL PLAYING RULES 2018-2021 CASE BOOK



Welcome to the 2018-2021 edition of the Softball Australia Playing Rules Case Book.

These cases will cover most rules and situations where the playing rules alone do not explain every situation that may occur in a game.

Through game situations, the case book will explain situational outcomes and further explain the interpretation of the playing rules, along with reasoning where required, rather than make the actual rule book more difficult and cumbersome.

The Official Rules of Softball were adopted by the World Baseball and Softball Congress - WBSC softball division at the 2017 Rules Congress and endorsed by Softball Australia for the 2018 and following seasons, the Case Plays contained in this document relate to those rules.

Wherever "he" or "him", or their related pronouns, may appear in this casebook, either as words, or as parts of words, they have been used for literary purposes and are meant in their generic sense (i.e., to include all humankind of any gender).

This document should be read in conjunction with the Softball Australia Playing Rules 2018- 2021.

Softball Australia acknowledges Softball Canada, Softball New Zealand, USA Softball and the WBSC for contributions in the past and present.

Softball Australia also acknowledges those individuals within the project groups that have spent tireless hours on reformatting, improving and clarifying this edition of the case book to the new playing rules and presentation format, adopted by Softball Australia in 2018 following WBSC congress of 2017.

KEY

B with Number = Batter

R with Number = Runner

S with Number = Substitutes

FLEX = Player playing defence for DP.

DP = Designated Player

OPO = Offensive Player Only

TR = Temporary Runner

F with Number = Fielder by Position

Defensive Players: Pitcher (F1), Catcher (F2), First Baseman (F3), Second Baseman (F4), Third Baseman (F5), Shortstop (F6), Left Fielder (F7), Centre Fielder (F8), Right Fielder (F9).

For Australian Championship Rules, Points of Emphasis (POE), Technical Bulletins and reference material please visit Softball.org.au

CONTENTS

RULE 1. THE GAME.....	3
1.1 DEFINITIONS.....	3
1.2 REGULATION GAME REQUIRMENTS	3
RULE 2. PLAYING FIELD AND EQUIPMENT	15
2.2 THE PLAYING FIELD	17
2.3 GAME EQUIPMENT	17
2.4 PLAYERS EQUIPMENT.....	19
2.5 UNIFORMS.....	21
RULE 3. PARTICIPANTS.....	23
3.2 LINE UP AND ROSTERS	26
3.3 APPEALS	40
3.4 COACHES	40
3.5 TEAM PERSONNEL.....	42
3.6 UMPIRES.....	43
RULE 4. PITCHING.....	47
4.1 DEFINITIONS.....	47
4.3 LEGAL PITCH REQUIREMENTS	51
4.4 WARM UP PITCHES	61
4.5 NO PITCH.....	62
4.6 DROPPED BALL	63
4.8 ILLEGAL PITCHER	63
RULE 5. BATTING AND BASE RUNNING.....	63
5.1 DEFINITIONS.....	63
5.3 ON DECK BATTER.....	83
5.4 BATTING	84
5.5 BATTER-RUNNER.....	95
5.6 DOUBLE BASE	105
5.7 USE OF ILLEGAL GLOVE	108
5.8 REMOVEAL OF HELMET.....	108
5.9 TOUCHING BASES IN LEGAL ORDER	110
5.10 RUNNERS.....	112
APPENDIX 5. UMPIRES	132

RULE 1 THE GAME

1.1 DEFINITIONS

1.1.1 APPEAL PLAY

Case 1 R1 is at 2B when the batter hits a single. R1 misses 3B on the way to the plate. As the ball is thrown to the plate, R1 returns to 3B where they are obstructed, and R1 is tagged prior to returning 3B. The Umpire rules a dead ball and awards R1 third base on the obstruction call. Can a successful appeal be made to the umpire on R1 missing 3B?

RULING: Even though R1 missed 3B base on their way to home, R1 was obstructed by the defence between 3B and home, R1 was played on so a dead ball is called and R1 returned to 3B on the award, prior to the appeal, the appeal cannot now be honoured. Rule 1.1.1; 5.10.2 c).

The defence lost the opportunity to make the appeal after the obstruction and dead ball and award, so Rule 5.10.2 d) i. 1. does not apply in this case.

Case 2 The Coach of Team A yells from the dugout that Team B's previous batter was batting out of order. The umpire allows the next batter to enter the batter's box and the pitcher delivers a pitch that is called a "Ball". The Coach of Team A now comes onto the field and argues that the plate umpire should have dealt with the appeal of the batting out of order of the previous batter.

RULING: The Umpire would rule that as the coach did not come onto the playing field to make the appeal of batting out of order before the next pitch, the appeal was not made in time and could not be considered.

Rule 1.1.1; 1.2.6 a) i; 1.2.6 c)

1.1.10 TIME

Case 1 The batter receives a fourth ball and their coach immediately requests "time". What action should the umpire take?

RULING: The Umpire shall ignore the request and order the batter to go to 1B. Once at first, a coach or player can request "time" after all play has stopped and it should be granted.

Rule 1.1.10; 3.6.7 g)

1.2 REGULATION GAME REQUIREMENTS

1.2.1 REGULATION GAME

Case 1 After 6 completed innings, Team A trails Team B 4 runs to 5. Team 'A' fails to score in the top of the 7th inning, so the umpire indicates the game has ended. Team B coach insists his team bats in the 7th inning in order to gain percentage.

RULING: The Umpire was correct in calling the game, with Team B declared the winner. The bottom half of the 7th inning need not be played, as Team B, batting second, has scored more runs in 6 innings than Team A in 7 innings. Team B has already won the game, so the game is not continued for the sake of percentage.

Rule 1.2.1 a)

- Case 2 The home team is leading by one run after five innings. The visitors score two runs to go ahead, in the top half of the 6th inning. With one out in the bottom half of the same inning, the umpire calls the game due to rain.
- RULING: This is a regulation game, and the home team wins. The score reverts back to the last complete inning because the home team has not completed its turn at bat in the sixth inning and is behind in the score.
Rule 1.2.1 c); 1.2.7 b)
- Case 3 After 7 completed innings, the score is Red 3 Blue 3. The game moves into the 8th inning and neither team scores but Red scores 1 run in the top of the 9th. Blue comes to bat the bottom half of the 9th inning and, with one out, scores 2 runs. The umpire allows the game to continue with Blue scoring 2 more runs before the 3rd out.
- RULING: While it was correct to play extra innings with the scores tied after 7 innings, the game should not have continued once Blue team, even though they only had one out, had scored more runs than Red team in the bottom of the 9th inning. Blue team wins the game 5 runs to 4.
Rule 1.2.1 b)
- Case 4 Is a game that is called for bad weather in the top of the 4th inning considered to be a regulation game?
- RULING: No. A regulation game must go 5 innings or 4 1/2 innings if the team second at bat is leading.
Rule 1.2.1 c)
- Case 5 At the end of 4 innings, the score is Blue 2 Red 1. There is no score in the top of the 5th inning. In the bottom of the 5th inning, Red scores (a) 2 runs, or (b) 0 runs. In either case, the game is called for rain with only 1 or 2 out.
- RULING: In (a) it is a regulation game, as the team batting second (Red) has scored more runs in their incomplete 5th inning than the team batting first (Blue) in their 5 completed innings. Red wins 3 runs to 2.
In (b) it is not a regulation game, as the team second at bat (Red) has not completed their 5th inning and still trails the team first at bat (Blue), who have completed 5 innings.
Rule 1.2.1 c)
- Case 6 During the top half of the fourth innings of a game a severe thunderstorm sweeps the ground. The Plate Umpire decides to call the game when it begins to rain, and he sees lightning nearby. The coach of the team batting second complains that the Umpire should allow play to continue in order to have a regulation game.
- RULING: The Plate Umpire has a 'duty of care' to ensure no player, spectator or umpire is placed in any danger by continuing a game, in this case by a possible lightning strike. The Umpire was correct in his actions.
Rule 1.2.1 c)
- Case 7 The home team is losing by one run after five and a half complete innings. The home team scores (a) one run, or (b) two runs, in the bottom of the 6th inning, but the game is called due to weather conditions, before the home team has completed its turn at bat. Who wins the game?
- RULING: It is a regulation game in both cases.
In (a) the game is a tie, and in (b) the home team is the winner. The score does not revert back to the last complete inning.
Rule 1.2.1.c) & d)

Case 8 At the end of the 5th inning, the score is Red 5 Blue 4. Red does not score in the top of the 6th inning. Blue, with one out, scores 1 run in the bottom of the 6th inning. At this point the game is called because of rain. Should the score revert to the end of the last complete inning?

RULING: No. As 5 completed innings have been played and the team second at bat has tied the score in the incomplete inning, it is a regulation tied game with the final score Red 5 Blue 5.

Rule 1.2.1 d)

Case 9 Is a game that is declared a forfeit by the Plate Umpire in the 3rd innings classified as a regulation game?

RULING: Yes. Even though 5 innings have not been completed, any game that is declared a forfeit is deemed to be regulation at the time of the forfeit.

Rule 1.2.1 e)

1.2.2 FORFEITED GAME

Case 1 Team 'A' refuses to begin a game at the scheduled commencement time, as the pitcher has failed to arrive. The team still has 10 players. What should the Plate Umpire do?

RULING: The Plate Umpire declares a forfeit in favour of Team 'B'.

Rule 1.2.2 b)

Case 2 After 4 completed innings of play, Blue Team decide they no longer wish to play, as they are being soundly beaten. Is this permissible?

RULING: No. The plate umpire should declare a forfeit in favour of Red Team.

Rule 1.2.2 c)

Case 3 After a suspension of play, Team 'B', in disputing a decision made against them, refuses to resume playing. The Plate Umpire calls "Play Ball". After 2 minutes Team 'B' still has not resumed playing. What should happen?

RULING: The Plate Umpire shall declare a forfeit in favour of Team 'A'.

Rule 1.2.2 d)

Case 4 After 4 completed innings and with a thunderstorm threatening, Red Team, batting first, led Blue Team 6-4. In an attempt to complete their half of the 5th inning quickly and in order to have Blue Team bat their 5th inning for a regulation game, the Red Team coach instructs his batters to deliberately step out of the batter's box when they hit the ball.

The Umpire overhears the instruction. The leadoff batter steps out of the box and hits the first pitch, which bounces in front of home plate.

RULING: The Plate Umpire shall declare a forfeit in favour of the Blue Team.

Rule 1.2.2 e)

Case 5 F1 for Team A continues to pitch illegally. After calling numerous illegal pitches, and after F1 is requested to pitch legally, the Umpire advises the coach of Team A that F1 is removed from the pitching position and can no longer pitch. Is this action of the Umpire correct?

RULING: Yes. When F1 continually violates the pitching rules he shall be removed from the pitching position for the remainder of the game, rather than having a forfeit declared.

Rule 1.2.2 f)

- Case 6 After 3 completed innings, the score is Red 2 Blue 4. In the top of the 4th inning, a Blue Team player is injured and cannot continue in the game. Blue Team has only 8 players left, as all substitutes have previously been in the game. Can they continue with only 8 players?
- RULING: No. The Plate Umpire shall declare a forfeit in favour of Red Team.
Rule 1.2.2 h)
- Case 7 In the third inning the Plate Umpire has cause to eject the coach for violently disputing a call. The coach leaves the bench and returns to the change rooms. Two innings later the plate umpire notices that the coach has quietly returned and is sitting at the end of the dugout giving signals to his base coach. What action should be taken?
- RULING: Any person ejected from a game may no longer participate in the game in any capacity. Even though the coach did the right thing by returning to the change room upon being ejected, he had no legal right to return to the dugout before the game had finished. The Plate Umpire should declare a forfeit to the team not at fault.
Rule 1.2.2 j)
- Case 8 The Base Umpire calls a runner out at 1st. A spectator, upset with the call, then enters the field and physically attacks the umpire. What should the Umpire do?
- RULING: The Base Umpire can do nothing; however, the Plate Umpire should declare a forfeit in favour of the defensive team.
Rule 1.2.2 k); 1.2.1 e)
- 1.2.3 RUN AHEAD RULE**
- Case 1 Team 'A', batting 1st, leads Team 'B' 17-2 after 2 complete innings. Neither team scores in the 3rd inning.
- RULING: As both teams have completed 3 innings and Team 'A' leads Team 'B' by 15 runs, the Plate Umpire should enforce the Run Ahead Rule by declaring Team 'A' the winner.
Rule 1.2.3 a)
- Case 2 After 3 completed innings, Red Team, batting 2nd, leads Blue Team 10-1. Blue Team scores 1 run in the top of the 4th inning, while Red Team, with one out, scores 2 runs. Should the game be terminated at this point?
- RULING: Yes. Red Team now leads Blue Team by 10 runs in the bottom half of the fourth inning, so the game should be called under the Run Ahead Rule.
Rule 1.2.3 a)
- Case 3 After 5 completed innings, one team leads the other by 9 runs. Should the game continue?
- RULING: No. Once 5 innings have been completed and one team leads by 7 runs or more, the game finishes under the Run Ahead Rule.
Rule 1.2.3 a)
- Case 4 After 4 completed innings Red Team, batting 1st, leads Blue Team 6-0. Red Team scores 1 run in the top of the 5th inning, so the umpire calls game under the Run Ahead Rule, declaring Red Team the winner. Blue Team complain that they should be allowed to bat the bottom half of the 5th inning.
- RULING: Blue Team is correct, as Red Team scored the 7th run in the top half of the inning.
Rule 1.2.3

1.2.4 TIEBREAKER

Case 1 The scores are tied after 7 completed innings. The Umpire advises both teams that the tiebreaker will now take place.

RULING: The Umpire is correct. The tiebreaker rule comes into effect as soon as the game enters extra innings.

Rule 1.2.4 a)

Case 2 After 7 completed innings, the score is Red 2 Blue 2, so the umpire declares the tiebreaker will now take place. Wilson is listed to bat 9th for Red Team in the 8th inning. The Red Team coach notifies the umpire that Edwards will substitute for Wilson and be the tiebreak runner at 2nd. Is this legal?

RULING: Yes. The tiebreak runner may be substituted for with a legal substitute at any time.

Rule 1.2.4 b)

Case 3 The game is into extra innings, and the tiebreaker rule is in effect. An improper runner (not an illegal substitute) goes to 2nd base to start the inning. The correct batter comes to bat and takes one pitch. The defence appeals the improper runner and demands he be called 'out'. The offence blames the umpire for the mistake, and demands the inning be started over again with the proper runner at 2nd. What do you do?

RULING: There is no penalty, provided the runner is a player already in the line-up. The proper runner (the player scheduled to bat last in that inning) is placed at 2nd base. Any play, while the improper runner is in the game, is legal.

Rule 1.2.4 c)

Case 4 In the bottom of the 7th inning, with the score tied, Red Team has Cox (batting in third position in the line-up) running at 2nd, Roberts (batting in fourth position) at 1st and Adams (batting in fifth position) in the batter's box with two out. Before Adams completes his turn at bat, Cox is retired sliding into 3rd for the third out. When Red Team comes to bat their half of the 8th inning, they place Cox at 2nd as the tiebreak runner, because he was the last player out in the 7th inning.

RULING: This is incorrect. Because Adams did not complete his turn at bat in the 7th inning, he will be the first batter in the 8th. This makes Roberts the ninth batter in the 8th inning, so he should be the tiebreak runner placed at 2nd.

Rule 1.2.4 a); 1.2.4 c)

1.2.5 SCORING OF RUNS

Case 1 With R1 on 3rd, R3 on 2nd and one out, B4 hits a fly ball to F7, who catches it. R1 tags up, leaves 3rd legally and scores. R3 gets caught in a rundown between 2nd and 3rd and is eventually tagged for the third out. Does the run of R1 count?

RULING: Yes. It was scored before the third out of the inning.

Rule 1.2.5 a)

Case 2 R1 on 3rd and R3 on 1st with one out. B4 hits a fly ball to F8 for the second out as R1 tags up and scores. R3 leaves before the catch and is put out returning to 1st. Does the run count?

RULING: Yes, this is a time play. The run counts if R1 crossed the plate before the appeal is made at 1st. (It is not considered a force out at 1st).

Rule 1.2.5 a); 5.1.19

- Case 3 R1 on 3B, R2 on 2B, and R3 on 1B with no outs. B5 hits into a double play forcing both R3 and B5. R2 missed 3B as both R1 and R2 scored. The defence appeals R2 missing 3B. Does R1's run count?
- RULING: Yes, when R3 and B5 were called out, this removed the force on R2 and the appeal is now a time play, therefore R1's run would count.
Rule 1.2.5 a); 5.1.19
- Case 4 Bases loaded with two out. B6 hits a home run but fails to touch (a) 3rd, or (b) 2nd, or (c) 1st. After all runners have scored a legal appeal is made in each case. How many runs actually score?
- RULING: In both (a) and (b) 3 runs score, as they all scored before the third out. In (c) no runs score, because the third out of the inning is the result of B6 being called out before legally touching 1st.
Rule 1.2.5 a) & c) i. & ii; 5.9 a); 5.1.19
- Case 5 R1 on 3B, R2 on 2B, R3 on 1B, 1 out. B5 hits safely to deep LF as all runners score on the hit but in doing so R3 misses 2B. F7, in an attempt to make an out at home plate throws wildly, B5 rounds 3B and tries to make it home. F2 recovers the ball and tags B5 for the 2nd out. The defence makes a legal appeal that R3 missed 2B for the 3rd out. How many runs score?
- RULING: R1 and R2 score. As B5 was put out beyond 1B for the (2nd out) this broke the force and the appeal on R3 for missing 2B (the 3rd out) became a "Time Play" with both R1 and R2 scoring before the 3rd out was made.
Rule 1.2.5 a); 1.2.6 e) i; 5.1.19
- Case 6 Bases loaded with two out. B6 hits a triple but misses (a) 1st, or (b) 2nd. A legal appeal is made after all 3 runners have scored and the umpire calls B6 out. How many runs score?
- RULING: In (a) no runs count, since B6 did not legally touch 1st. In (b) 3 runs count, as the third out was not a force-out.
Rule 1.2.5 a); Rule 1.2.5 c) ii.
- Case 7 It is the bottom of the 7th inning. The score is tied and two are out with R1 on 3rd, R2 on 2nd and R3 on 1st. B6 is then walked to force R1 home. B6, assuming the game is over, fails to go to 1st and returns to the dugout.
- RULING: B6 is out automatically when he enters the dugout. The run does not count, as the third out was made before B6 legally touched 1st.
Rule 1.2.5 c) i; 5.5.2 a) iv.
- Case 8 R1 at third and R2 at 1B with one out. B5 hits a pitched ball for a double, but missed first and R2 missed second when advancing to third, as R1 scores. The defence appeals (a) the BR missing first and then R2 for missing 2B or (b) R2 for missing 2B and then the BR missing 1B for the third out. Does R1's run count?
- RULING: In (a) the force at 2B is removed when they appealed first on the batter-runner and the run would count. In (b) when the defence appealed 2B first and then 1B, both outs are force outs, and the run would not count.
Rule 1.2.5 c) i. & ii.

- Case 9 R1 on 3rd and R3 on 1st with two out. B6 hits a ground ball to F4, who attempts to tag R3. He manages to avoid the tag as R1 scores. After a rundown, R3 is eventually put out between 1st and 2nd. Does the run count?
- RULING: No. The third out is a force out.
Rule 1.2.5 c) ii.
- Case 10 R1 on 3B and R2 on 1B with two outs, when B4 hits a ground ball to the second baseman. The defensive player chases R2 back to 1B as R1 scores. R2 is tagged while (a) off 1B or (b) standing on 1B.
- RULING: In both cases (a) and (b) R2 is out as they are forced to leave the base due to the batter becoming a base runner. The run does not score.
Rule 1.2.5 c) ii; 5.10.3 a) iii.
- Case 11 R1 on 3B and R2 on 1B, 2 out. B5 hits safely to deep CF. R1 scores on the hit and R2 advances to 3B, but in doing so misses 2B. B5 remains at 1B. The ball is returned to 2B where the defence make a legal appeal that R2 had missed 2B. The appeal is upheld and R2 becomes the 3rd out. Does the run score?
- RULING: No – At the time of the appeal R2 was forced to 2B by a succeeding runner (B5) who is not yet out so the third out is a force out.
Rule 1.2.5 c) ii; 5.1.19
- Case 12 R1 on 3B, R2 on 2B, R3 on 1B, 2 out. B6 hits safely to deep RF, both R1 & R2 score on the hit but in doing so R2 misses 3B as R3 advances to and remains 3B. B6, after rounding 1B is subsequently tagged out for the third out. The defence makes a legal appeal that R2 missed 3B in an attempt to remove the run of R1. The appeal is upheld and R2 becomes the 4th out. Does the run of R1 count?
- RULING: Yes - Although it is legal to make a 4th out appeal to remove a run, in this instance the run of R1 would count. At the time of the appeal, the force situation that applied at the time of the infraction by R2 (because B6 became a batter-runner) was removed when B6 (now R6 having rounded 1B) was tagged for the 3rd out. Therefore, the appeal became a “Time Play” with R1 scoring before the appeal.
Rule 1.2.5 a); 1.2.5 c) ii; 1.2.5 d); 1.2.6 e); 5.1.19
- Case 13 R1 on 3B, R2 on 2B, R3 on 1B, 2 out. B6 hits safely to deep LF, both R1 & R2 score on the hit. B6 advances to 2B as R3 is tagged at home for the third out. In doing so: a) R1 fails to touch home plate or b) R2 fails to touch home plate. In both a) and b) the defence make a legal appeal in an attempt to remove the runs. In a) the appeal is upheld and R1 becomes the 4th out; in b) the appeal is upheld and R2 becomes the 4th out. Do any runs score?
- RULING: In a) No runs score. R1 is out on appeal. The run of R2 does not count in this case as a run may not score if the additional out (4th) was a preceding runner (R1).
Rule 1.2.5 c) ii & iv; 1.2.5 d); 1.2.6 e) i.
In b) R1 scores. Although R2 is out on appeal, at the time of R2 missing home plate a force existed by virtue of B6 becoming the B/R, but at the time of the appeal the force no longer existed due to a succeeding forced runner (R3) being tagged out beyond the base to which they were forced. This made the appeal play a “Time Play” with R1 having scored before the appeal.
Rule 1.2.5 a); 1.2.6 e) i; 5.1.19

- Case 14 R1 on 3B, R2 on 2B, R3 on 1B, 1 out. B5 hits a Home Run, R2 misses 3B and R3 misses 2B. The defence makes a legal appeal that R2 missed 3B then appeal that R3 missed 2B. Both appeals are upheld for the 2nd and 3rd outs. How many runs score?
- RULING: No run scores. The appeals were made in the correct order, each one a force play.
 Note: Had the defence appealed R3 missing 2B first then appealed R2 missing 3B this will break the force play and created a "Time Play" for the 3rd out. In this case R1's run will count.
 B5 does not score in either case as B5 was a succeeding runner who cannot score when a preceding runner is the third or additional out of the half inning.
 Rule 1.2.5 c) ii; 1.2.6 e) i; 5.1.19
- Case 15 With 2 out and R1 on 3rd, R2 on 2nd and R3 on 1st, B4 hits safely to deep F9, scoring both R1 and R2; however, R1 misses home plate. On the relayed throw, R3 is tagged out sliding into home plate for the third out. The defence now appeal for R1 missing home plate in an attempt to remove the run of R2 and the appeal is upheld. Does the run of R2 count?
- RULING: No. The appeal on R1 is legal. It results in a 4th out, as it may be made in an attempt to remove a run.
 Rule 1.2.5 c) iv. & d)
- Case 16 R1 on 3B, R2 on 2B, R3 on 1B, 2 out. B6 hits a Home Run, R3 misses 3B and 2B. The defence makes a legal dead ball appeal for R3 missing 3B. The administrating umpire upholds the appeal and calls R3 out for the 3rd out and rules that both R1 and R2 runs scores. The defence realizing R3 missed 2B now make an additional out appeal to remove R2 and R3's runs.
- RULING: As R3 has already been declared the 3rd out for missing 3B an additional out appeal on R3 for missing 2B is not a valid appeal as R3 has already been declared out in this play and cannot be given out a second time.
 Rule 1.2.5 d); 1.2.6 d)
- Case 17 With 2 out and R1 on 3rd, R2 on 2nd and R3 on 1st, B4 hits safely to deep F9, scoring both R1 and R2, but R2 misses home plate. On the relayed throw, R3 is tagged out sliding into home plate for the third out. The defence now appeal for R2 missing home plate in an attempt to remove the run of R1 and the appeal is upheld. Does the run of R1 count?
- RULING: Yes. Although the 4th out appeal is legally made and removes the run of R2, the run of R1 would still count as the force was broken before the appeal.
 Rule 1.2.5 a) & d); 5.1.19
- Case 18 R3 on 3rd, R4 on 2nd, R5 on 1st with one out. B6 hits a deep fair ground ball to F7 who throws it to F2 to try and make an out at home plate. R3, R4 and R5 make it home safely; however, in the process R5 misses 2nd. The throw to F2 is wild so R6 rounds 3rd and tries to make it home to score. F2 recovers the ball and tags R6 out at home plate for the second out of the inning.
- In an attempt to negate the runs scored by R3, R4 and R5, F4 now appeals for R5 missing 2nd base and the umpire declares R5 out. Do all 3 runs count?
 RULING: No, only the runs of R3 & R4 count.
 R5 is the third out of the inning on the appeal but R6 was put out before the appeal. Consequently, the out of R5 is not considered to be a Force Out and as he is now the third/last out his run will not score.
 Rule 1.2.5 a) & d); 5.1.19

Case 19 With R1 on 3rd, R2 on 2nd and one out, B4 hits a fly ball to F7, who catches it. Before the ball is touched by F7 R1 leaves 3rd. F7, after the catch, throws the ball wildly into the stands in an attempt for a double play on R1 at home. R2 reaches 3rd on the throw and the umpire awards him home. After the ball is returned to F1, F5 appeals for R1 leaving too soon.

RULING: R1 is out for leaving early and, as this is the third out, both runs are cancelled. Succeeding runners cannot score when a preceding runner is the third out. Rule 1.2.5 c) iv.

1.2.6 APPEAL PLAYS

Case 1 With runners on 2nd and 3rd and none out, B6 flies out to F7. Both runners are suspected of leaving their bases too soon. With the ball still in play, the defence throw the ball to 3rd (and appeal), then to 2nd (and appeal). Is it legal to make 2 appeals on the same play?

RULING: Yes. In this case, the defence is not guessing. (A case of guessing would be where two runners pass the same base and, during the appeal, the defence cannot decide which runner missed the base. Therefore, they try to appeal both, figuring that they will get one right for sure)! Rule 1.2.6 e) ii; 5.10.3 a) vii. & Effect; 5.9 g)

Case 2 R1 on 2nd and R2 on 1st with none out when B3 flies out to F8. R1 legally tags up on the catch, while R2 leaves too soon and they both advance one base safely. The ball is returned to the infield and F1 throws it to F3 for an appeal on R2; on seeing this R1 breaks for home. F3 makes the appeal, and then throws the ball wide of home plate and it goes out of play.

RULING: This is continuous play. The appeal at 1st makes 2 out and R1 scores on the overthrow. Rule 1.2.6 b) ii. & e) ii; 5.10.3 a) vii. & Effect; 5.10.5 b) ii.

Case 3 R1 on 1st with none out. B2 hits a long fly ball to F8. R1 leaves 1st on the hit and is approaching 3rd as the ball is caught by F8, so he turns back toward 2nd in an attempt to re-touch at 1st. The throw from F8 to F3 is wild and goes into the dugout. F8's teammates quickly return the ball to F3, standing in the infield, as R1 rounds 2nd heading for 1st. F3 now makes a Dead Ball appeal, before R1 has re-touched 1st.

RULING: Firstly, the ball becomes dead when it enters the dugout on a wild throw and R1 is entitled to return to a missed base, or one left too soon, while the ball is dead. Secondly, a Dead Ball Appeal can only be made after the umpire places a new ball into the game; however, in this case the ball was returned to the game by the defensive player's teammates, not the umpire. As a result, the appeal should be disallowed. Rule 1.2.6 c) & Exception i.

Case 4 R1 on 3rd and R2 on 2nd with one out. Each runner leaves early on a fly ball caught by F7. The ball is returned to the infield and thrown to F5, who tags R2, standing on the base, and appeals. The umpire calls R2 out for the third out but indicates the run will score. The defence then appeal for R1 leaving too soon.

RULING: It is permissible to have more than one appeal on a play and a fourth out can be made to nullify a run. Therefore, the appeal of R1 in addition to R2 is legal. If the umpire ruled R1 out, the run would be nullified. Rule 1.2.6 d); 1.2.5 d); 5.10.3 a) vii. & Effect

- Case 5 R1 on 1st with one out, when B3 triples to left field. R1 scores on the hit but, in doing so, misses 2nd base. The ball is returned to the infield and the umpire calls "Time". When play is resumed F1, who is not on the pitching plate, throws to F4, who appeals the missed base. On seeing this, B3 breaks from 3rd and scores.
- RULING: The advance is legal as the ball is alive. R1 is called out on the appeal for missing 2nd.
Rule 1.2.6 a) & b); 5.10.3 a) viii. & Effect
- Case 6 R1 on 1st. On a ground ball hit to the outfield, R1 rounds 2nd (misses it) and ends up safely at 3rd. F1, now with the ball, while in the pitcher's circle but not on the plate, turns toward 2nd and cocks his arm to throw to 2nd for an appeal. Before F1 releases the ball, R1 breaks for home. The appeal is not made at 2nd but rather R1 is caught in a run-down between 3rd and home, resulting in his being safe at home. Because they missed the out there, the defence now throw the ball to 2nd and appeal the missed base.
- Ruling: This Appeal is legal as it has been made before a pitch has been thrown. R1 is out and the run does not score.
A runner may leave their base during a live ball appeal plays when the pitcher makes a throwing motion indicating a play or fake throw.
Rule 1.2.6 b) iii; 5.10.3 a) viii. & Effect
- Case 7 R1 on 2nd and R2 on 1st with none out. B3 hits a double scoring R1. R2 advances to 3rd but R1 fails to touch 3rd while advancing to home. "Time" is called, as the defence now want to make an appeal. F1 throws the ball to F5 but it goes over his head, allowing both R2 and B3 to score on the wild throw. When the ball is back in the infield, the defence again appeal R1 for missing 3rd.
- RULING: Because the ball is dead on a Dead Ball Appeal, runners cannot advance, even if the ball is thrown to a base for the appeal. Any team member in the infield can verbally make this appeal, with or without the ball. R2 must return to 3rd and B3 to 2nd. R1 is out on the appeal and no runs score.
Rule 1.2.6 c); 5.10.3 a) viii. & Effect
- Case 8 R3 slides into home plate but misses it. F2 misses the tag. What should the Umpire do?
- RULING: After a brief hesitation, he should make a "Safe" call. If F2 then tags R3, appealing that he missed the plate, R3 should be declared out.
Rule 1.2.6; 5.10.3 a) x. & Effect
- Case 9 B1 hits a home run over the fence. He rounds all bases, fails to touch home plate, and goes into the dugout. The umpire throws a new ball to F1 and calls "Play Ball". F1 indicates he wants to appeal B1 for missing the plate and throws the ball underhand to F2. The new batter, B2, swings at the throw, also hitting a home run.
- RULING: Because F1 has indicated he wanted to make an appeal. As the Umpire had declared "Play Ball" the Umpire should have called "Time" to allow the appeal process. The appeal should be allowed, and the ball is dead. B1 is called out and the hit of B2 is nullified.
Rule 1.2.6 c); 5.10.3 a) x. & Effect

Case 10 B2 hits a long ball to the outfield and it bounces over the home run fence for a ground rule double. B2 fails to touch 1st base. The ball is returned to F6 and before play is resumed (a) F9 appeals for B2 missing 1st, or (b) F3, who does not have the ball, stands on 1st, and appeals the missed base.

RULING: These appeals are Dead Ball appeals, which may legally be made. In (a) the appeal is disallowed, as it is only fielders stationed in the infield who can make appeals. In (b) the appeal is allowed, as any fielder who, with or without possession of the ball, is stationed within the infield at the time of the appeal, may make a Dead Ball appeal.
Rule 1.2.6 c)

Case 11 R1 on 2nd, R2 on 1st with one out when B4 hits a double to F8. F8 picks up the ball and throws to F2. R1 slides and misses home plate prior to F2's tag and proceeds to the dugout. F2 realises R1's mistake and follows him to the dugout to make a live ball appeal. R2, who stopped at 3rd, proceeds to home plate and B4 rounds 2nd and sprints for 3rd when F2 leaves the field of play to tag R1.

RULING: The ball is dead and all runners are awarded one base from the time F2 left the field of play, as F2 is considered to have unintentionally carried the ball out-of-play. R2 is awarded home and B4 awarded 3rd. The defence may still make a Dead Ball Appeal on R1 missing home.
Rule 1.2.6 c); 5.10.5 a) ii. 3.

Case 12 B1 hits safely and reaches 2nd but fails to touch 1st. The defence now request "Time" to make an appeal.

RULING: The Umpire should grant the request, thereby making the ball dead.
Rule 1.2.6 c); 5.10.3 a) viii. & Effect

Case 13 R1 on 3rd and R2 on 2nd with two outs. The batter swings and misses the 3rd strike, but the ball gets away from the catcher. The runners advance and R1 scores while R2 is thrown out at the plate. The catcher then notices that the BR has failed to advance to 1st and throws to 1st for the force out.

Ruling R1 scores. R2 is the 3rd out of the inning. [1.1.5]. The BR is considered to have completed their turn at bat.

Note: The throw to first base by the catcher is not considered an Additional Out *Appeal* as the appeal is not on a runner who scored nor is it made to correct the batting order. [1.2.6 d); 1.2.6 e)].

Rule 1.2.6 d) and e) are appeal plays, the definition of an appeal play is not a force play on a BR. 1.2.5 d) does not apply as it is not an appeal. 4th out appeals only are applicable.

If F2 played on the BR before the 3rd out then no runs would count, as it would have been a force out. In this case it is scored as a fielder's choice.

1.2.7 WINNER OF GAME

Case 1 After 3 completed innings, the score is Red 10 Blue 0. In the 4th inning, a Blue Team player is ejected, leaving only 8 available players to continue the game. The Plate Umpire declares a forfeit in favour of Red Team, who insists that the score remains 10-0.

RULING: Although Red Team has scored 10 runs, 3 of those runs are not counted, as the score of a forfeited game is recorded as 7-0.
Rule 1.2.7 d)

1.2.8 GROUNDS FOR PROTESTS

- Case 1 Team 'A' lodges a protest on whether or not a run should count, when the 3rd out is a force out.
- RULING: The protest is valid, as it concerns a rule interpretation. The game is replayed from the point at which the incorrect decision was made.
Rule 1.2.8 a)
- Case 2 Team 'B' lodges a protest based on the failure of an umpire to apply the correct penalty on a play. The protest is dismissed.
- RULING: The game is not replayed, and the score stands as played.
Rule 1.2.8 a) iii; 1.2.14 a)
- Case 3 Team 'A' protests a misinterpretation of a rule in the 3rd inning. The protest is upheld.
- RULING: The game is replayed from the point at which the incorrect decision was made, with the decision reversed.
Rule 1.2.8 a) i; 1.2.14 b)
- Case 4 Team 'A' considers that Team 'B' has used an ineligible team roster member, so protests this fact while the game is in progress.
- RULING: This is a valid protest that can only be lodged after the game has been completed. The Umpire cannot make any decisions with regard to plays executed by the alleged offender. The competition management committee would consider this protest.
Rule 1.2.8 c); 1.1.9 b); 1.2.11 a)

1.2.10 PROTESTS THAT WILL NOT BE RECEIVED

- Case 1 Team 'A' protests a misinterpretation of a rule in the 3rd inning. They go on to win the game but submits the protest to the committee anyway.
- RULING: As the team has won the game, the protest cannot be considered.
Rule 1.2.10
- Case 2 Team 'A' lodges a protest on (a) whether a batted ball is fair or foul or (b) the base umpire's judgement on a call at 1st,
- RULING: Both protests are denied, as they concern only an umpire's judgement.
Rule (a) 1.2.10 a) & (b) 1.2.10 b)

1.2.11 NOTIFICATION OF INTENT TO PROTEST

- Case 1 R1 on 1st with one out, when F2 drops the 3rd strike. R1 steals 2nd, as B4 runs to 1st and is allowed to remain there. The defensive team protests the game (a) before the first pitch to B5, or (b) after the first pitch to B5, or (c) after the game is over.
- RULING: In (a) the protest is valid. In (b) and (c) the protest is not valid, as it was not made before the next pitch.
Rule 1.2.11 a); 1.2.8 b)

RULE 2 PLAYING FIELD AND EQUIPMENT

2.1.1 ALTERED BAT

Case 1 A batter that has hit safely is discovered to be using a bat with a knob painted with team colours.

Ruling: This is a legal bat. Painting either end of the bat for identification is not considered an altered bat. If the barrel of the bat were painted, this would be altered.
Rule 2.1.1

Case 2 The batter hits a double with an aluminium bat, containing a wooden handle.

Ruling: The ball is dead, batter is out, and base runners may not advance. The batter is ejected for using an altered bat.
Rule 2.1.1; 5.4.4 b) iii

Case 3 The home team keeps their aluminium bat in a container of ice in the dugout.

Ruling: The umpire should instruct the team to remove the bats from the ice-filled container and prohibit use of the bat(s) in the game.
Rule 2.1.1; 5.4.4 b) iii

Case 4 B1 hits a double using a baseball bat that has been reduced in diameter to softball size.

Ruling: This is an altered bat. B1 is out, the ball is dead, and runners may not advance. B1 is ejected from the game for using an altered bat.
Rule 2.1.1; 5.4.4 b) iii

Case 5 A batter hits the ball to LF with an aluminium bat. When the batter discarded the bat, it was seen by the umpire and the batter's name was engraved on the barrel end of the bat.

Ruling: The umpire should eject the player from the game and the bat removed from the field of play as it is considered an altered bat. Engraved markings can be on the knob of the bat, but not on the barrel end, unless the marking was done with a laser process on the barrel end. This would leave a smooth finish and not cut the ball.
Rule 2.1.1; 5.4.4 b) iii

Case 6 Can a bat with a new coat of paint, identical to the original, be used?

Ruling: No. To repaint the bat is to alter the bat. An identifying mark of team colours may be added to the top of knob end. The barrel end may not be sandpapered or painted. Rule 2.1.1

Case 7 A batter enters the batter's box with a softball bat with a cone-shaped handle, eliminating the ¼-inch knob.

Ruling: The batter is declared out and ejected from the game for using an altered bat.
Rule 2.1.1; 5.4.4 b) iii

2.1.3 BATTERS BOX

Case 1 The pitcher takes their position on the rubber while the batter B1 starts with a foot outside the lines of the batter's box or touching home plate.

Ruling: If the pitch has not started, the umpire should hold up play and put the batter into the box. In cases where there are no batter's box lines evident, good judgment must be used and the benefit of any doubt must go to the batter.
Rule 2.1.3; 5.4.2 d); 5.4.4 b) iv; 3.6.7 d)

2.1.4 CATCHER'S BOX

Case 1 F2 is in position to receive a pitch with one foot touching the line of the catcher's box and the other foot completely within the box.

RULING: This is legal as F2 is to be considered as being in the catcher's box.
Rule 2.1.4

2.1.5 DUGOUT

Case 1 The umpire notices some spectators sitting in the dugout talking to several players. What action should be taken?

RULING: The dugout is an area designated only for players and official representatives of the team, so the spectators should be requested to leave the dugout.
Rule 2.1.5

2.1.8 HELMETS

Case 1 B3 is at bat, when B4 enters the on-deck circle without a helmet. What should the umpire do?

RULING: Request B4 to wear a helmet. If he refuses, he should be ejected.
Rule 2.1.8; 5.3 c) & Effects

Case 2 B1 enters the batter's box wearing a bicycle helmet without earflaps or full skull protection. Is this legal?

RULING: No, the helmet does not meet specifications. The umpire should not allow play to continue until B1 wears a legal helmet.
Rule 2.1.8 a)

Case 3 F2 wears a helmet that looks like a skullcap with no earflaps. Is this legal?

RULING: Yes.
Rule 2.1.8 b)

Case 4 A left-handed fielder has a helmet with (a) no earflaps or, (b) one earflap that covers the left ear only. What should the umpire do?

RULING: Nothing, as both helmets are legal. Any defensive player may wear a helmet with or without earflaps.
Rule 2.1.8 b)

2.1.12 OFFICIAL EQUIPMENT

Case 1 R1 on 3B. B8 hits a slow roller to the shortstop who throws to F2 in an attempt to retire R1. The throw is low and hits B8's bat, which is lying on the ground in front of home plate. The ball ricochets back to the fence after R1 crosses the plate. B8 then advances to 2B.

RULING: R1 is safe at home and the ball is alive. The discarded bat is considered official equipment. Nobody is out.
Rule 2.1.12

Case 2 R1 on 2B. 1 out. B3 hits a ball to the outfield. The on-deck batter picks up B3's bat but realizes that the play will go home so they drop the bat. F7's throw to home hits the bat that is now in front of home plate as R1 is rounding 3B. The ball bounces away from the catcher and R1 easily scores. The Umpire rules the ball blocked and calls "Dead Ball". R1 returns to 3B and the BR is awarded 1B or returned to 1B if they had already reached 1B but not 2B when the ball became dead.

RULING: The umpire is correct, if the Umpire judged no apparent play is obvious as the ball contacted non-official equipment.

As the on-deck batter moved the bat and dropped it in front of the plate, if the umpire judged there was an obvious play on R1 had the ball not been blocked, then the ball would be ruled dead and R1 called out. B3 would be awarded 1B or returned to 1B depending on where they were at the time the ball became blocked.

Note: Once the on-deck batter moved the bat, the bat became non-official offensive equipment. If an umpire or defensive player moved the bat, it would still remain as official offensive equipment.

Rule 2.1.12; 5.10.4 p); 5.10.3 c) xii

2.2 THE PLAYING FIELD

2.2.2 INCORRECT DISTANCES

Case 1 During a game, the pitching distance is found to be incorrect. It is brought to the attention of the Umpire (a) at the end of a completed inning, or (b) after 2 batters in the top half of an inning.

RULING: In (a) the Umpire should correct the error immediately. In (b) the error should be corrected at the start of the next complete inning. In both cases, the game is continued.

Rule 2.2.2 b)

2.2.3 GROUND OR SPECIAL RULES

Case 1 After a game has started, a lot of spectators overflow to the vicinity of a foul line and interfere with the usual overthrow conditions.

RULING: The Plate Umpire should meet with each captain, or coach, together and state special ground rules that may be necessary to cover the conditions.

Rule 2.2.3; Appendix 5 A g)

2.3 GAME EQUIPMENT

2.3.1 THE OFFICIAL BAT

Case 1 Is a bat that is made of two interchangeable pieces considered to be a legal bat?

RULING: Yes, provided the components have a unique locking key and the bat meets all other standards of a one-piece bat.

Rule 2.3.1; Appendix 2 A a) & b)

Case 2 The Umpire notices a team has a three-sided bat while checking the team equipment.

RULING: This is an illegal bat, as three-sided bats are no longer permitted for use in a game.

Rule 2.3.1; Appendix 2 A b) ii. 4

- Case 3 While checking the team equipment, the Umpire discovers a bat that is 88cm (35 inches) long.
- RULING: This is an Illegal bat, and it should be removed from the game.
Rule 2.3.1; Appendix 2 A (b) ii. 5
- Case 4 B1 is in possession of a baseball bat, which is detected by the umpire before B1 enters the batter's box. What is the penalty?
- RULING: There is no violation, since the bat was discovered before the batter started his turn at bat. This is an illegal bat, as it exceeds the bat size specifications, so it should be removed from the game.
Rule 2.3.1; Appendix 2 A b) ii. 5 & 6; 5.1.48; 5.4.4 b) iii.
- Case 5 Prior to a game, the umpire notices a team member using a metal bat to hammer a base fastener into the ground. He checks the bat and finds it now has some rough and sharp burrs resulting from the hammering. What should he do?
- RULING: As the bat is now considered to present a hazard to the players, it should be declared illegal and removed from the game.
Rule 2.3.1; Appendix 2 A b) ii. 7
- Case 6 Prior to a game the umpire checks the bats and notices that one has some very fine stress cracks.
- RULING: The bat should be declared illegal and removed from the game.
Rule 2.3.1; Appendix 2 A b) ii. 7
- Case 7 A metal bat with a proper rubber sleeve-type grip is legal. Is it legal to put one layer of tape on that grip?
- RULING: Yes, provided that smooth plastic type tape is not used.
Rule 2.3.1; Appendix 2 A b) ii. 9
- Case 8 Can a bat have a rubber plug in the barrel end?
- RULING: Yes, provided the bat is metal and not a one-piece construction with the barrel end closed. If the barrel end is not closed, it shall have a rubber or vinyl plastic insert firmly secured at the large end of the bat.
Rule 2.3.1; Appendix 2 A b) ii. 10
- Case 9 Should a bat that has a discernible rattle be permitted for use in a game?
- RULING: No. A rattle in a bat is an indication that the bat may be internally damaged. As such, the bat should be considered as an Illegal Bat.
Rule 2.3.1; Appendix 2 A b) iv.
- Case 10 When checking the bats prior to a game, the Umpire discovers a bat with a cone-shaped handle that has eliminated the 0.6cm (1/4 inch) knob.
- RULING: This is an altered bat. The Umpire should remove the bat from the game.
Rule 2.3.1; Appendix 2 A c); 2.1.1; 5.4.4 b) iii
- Case 11 B3 has a 2-2 count when he requests "Time", which is granted. He then changes from a wooden bat to a metal bat.
- RULING: Legal action. B3 may use a wooden or metal bat.
Rule 2.3.1 Appendix 2 A b) ii. 1 & 2

Case 12 Metal bats sometimes get damaged. In this case the bat has a small dent and is slightly flat instead of being completely round. Can this bat still be used?

RULING: Although the bat is no longer round it may still be used, provided it will still pass through a bat ring. If it will not pass through the ring due to the flat spot, it should be declared illegal and removed from the game.

Rule 2.3.1; Appendix 2 A b) ii. 4

Note: Umpires can measure a bats diameter by using an official bat ring.

Case 13 The umpire is checking a bat that has no "Approval" notice as it is worn away and will pass through the bat ring. Is the bat legal for use?

RULING: As long as the bat meets all requirements of a softball bat, it is legal even though the "Approval" notice can no longer be seen.

Rule 2.3.1; Appendix 2 A c) i.

2.3.2 WARM-UP BATS

Case 1 The Umpire is checking the bats prior to a game. He notices a bat that is of one-piece construction, has a safety grip and is properly marked "Warm-up". The barrel end passes through an official bat ring.

RULING: The bat should be declared illegal and removed from the game. The construction and grip are legal; however, the barrel end should be in excess of 5.7cm (2 ¼ inches) and the bat ring should not go over the end of an official warm-up bat.

Rule 2.3.2; Appendix 2 B

Case 2 An on-deck batter is discovered warming up with a metal warm-up bat that has a wooden handle.

RULING: This is not a legal warm-up bat, so the Umpire should not allow its use.

Rule 2.3.2; Appendix 2 B; 5.3 c) iii. & Effect

2.4 PLAYERS' EQUIPMENT

2.4.1 GLOVES AND MITTS

Case 1 F2 is using a glove. The offensive team coach insists that F2 must use a mitt.

RULING: It is not mandatory for F2 to use a mitt, but if mitts are used only the catcher and first baseman are allowed to use them.

Rule 2.4.1(a)

Case 2 F1 is discovered using a blue glove with black webbing and green lacing. Is this a legal glove for F1?

RULING: Yes. All players, including pitchers, may wear solid-coloured gloves, other than white, grey or the colour of the ball, or they may wear multi coloured gloves with coloured lacing provided none of the colours are white, grey or the colour of the ball.

Rule 2.4.1 c)

Case 3 The pitcher enters the field wearing a white glove. The colour of the ball is optic yellow.

RULING: The glove is legal to use.

Rule 2.4.1 c)

Case 4 When F6 takes the field at the start of the game, it is noticed that he has a glove with a white circle, resembling a ball, on the outside.

RULING: This is an illegal glove and should be removed from the game.

Rule 2.4.1 d)

2.4.2 SHOES

Case 1 During the course of the game, a player develops a blister on his foot. He removes his shoes and continues to play bare-footed.

RULING: This is illegal. All players must wear shoes at all times.
Rule 2.4.2 a)

Case 2 Four players in a team have smooth soled shoes, while the remainder have shoes with moulded nylon cleats. Is this allowed?

RULING: Yes.
Rule 2.4.2 b)

Case 3 Players on team "A" are wearing a mixture of golf shoes, athletic shoes, and football boots.

RULING: All of the above footwear are illegal in all divisions of softball.
Rule 2.4.2 c)

Case 4 A junior competition player is discovered wearing metal cleats, so the Umpire requests he change to shoes that are legal for junior players. Is there a penalty if the player, after a warning, continues to wear the metal cleats?

RULING: Yes. Metal cleats are not permissible in any division of junior play. If the player continues to wear any illegal shoes after a warning from the Umpire he shall be ejected from the game.
Rule 2.4.2 f) & Effect

2.4.3 PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT

Case 1 F2 indicates that he does not wish to wear his mask.

RULING: It is a safety requirement that all catchers wear a mask.
Rule 2.4.3 a)

Case 2 A coach comes out and takes warm-up pitches at the plate, without wearing (a) a mask with throat protector, or (b) a helmet.

RULING: It is illegal in both (a) and (b). Any member of a defensive team must wear mask, throat protector and helmet when taking warm-up pitches from the pitcher's plate.
Rule 2.4.3 a)

Case 3 The Umpire notices a pitcher warming up in the warm-up area with a catcher who is not wearing a mask or helmet. What should he do?

RULING: He should advise the catcher to wear a mask, helmet, and throat protector. If the catcher refuses to do so, he must be replaced by another defensive team member who will do so.
Rule 2.4.3 a) & Effect

Case 4 A defensive player enters the playing field wearing a plastic facemask. The umpire insists that he removes the facemask, as it is not legal. Is the umpire correct?

RULING: No. Facemasks are legal for all offensive or defensive players, other than catchers, for safety reasons.
Rule 2.4.3 b)

- Case 5 F2 enters the playing field wearing a plastic facemask instead of the normal mask with throat protector.
- RULING: F2 should be requested to wear the standard mask and helmet, as the plastic facemask is not suitable protection for a catcher.
Rule 2.4.3 b)
- Case 6 Do all catchers, including male catchers, have to wear a body protector?
- RULING: Yes. For safety reasons, all catchers in Fast Pitch, regardless of gender or age, must wear a body protector.
Rule 2.4.3 c)
- Case 7 Is it permissible for a catcher to wear soccer style shin pads that do not cover the knees?
- RULING: No. For safety reasons, all catchers in Fast Pitch, regardless of gender or age, must wear shin guards that offer protection to the kneecap.
Rule 2.4.3 d)
- Case 8 B1 enters the batter's box wearing an arm guard that covers the elbow. B1 hits the ball and reaches 1B safely. Once all play has stopped the base umpire calls "Time" and asks B1 on first base to remove the protective guard that he is wearing on his elbow. Is the umpire correct in taking this action?
- RULING: Yes. Protective arm or leg guards may only be worn by a batter and batter-runner until such time as he becomes a runner after all play has stopped.
Rule 2.4.3 e)
- Case 9 The batter wears a protective guard on their elbow. The batter hits the ball and reaches 1st base safely.
- RULING: Wearing protective equipment on the legs or arms while at bat or as a batter-runner is legal however the umpires should require the leg and/or arm protective to be removed once all play has stopped.
Rule 2.4.3 e)
- 2.5 UNIFORMS**
- 2.5.1 PLAYER UNIFORMS**
- Case 1 Is it permissible for a player to wear a traditional turban, rather than the team cap that the rest of the team must wear?
- RULING: Yes, any player or coach may wear items of uniform that vary from the standard uniform of the team, if they are worn for the specific religious requirements of that player/coach.
Rule 2.5.1
- Case 2 Do all male players have to wear caps?
- RULING: Yes, and they must be worn properly. However, if a defensive player wishes to wear an approved helmet, he may do so in lieu of the cap, provided the helmet is of similar colour of the team uniform.
Rule 2.5.1 a) i. & iii.

- Case 3 A female player is discovered wearing a hard, plastic visor and is requested to remove it. She refuses, as she has no other visor or cap and states that she wishes to protect her eyes from the glare of the field.
- RULING: Hard visors are not permitted for safety reasons, so if she fails to comply with the direction the umpire should remove her from the game.
Rule 2.5.1 a) ii. & Effect
- Case 4 A female team has 3 players wearing caps, with the remaining players not wearing any headgear.
- RULING: This is legal, provided all 3 caps are the same. Caps, visors, and headbands are optional for female players and they may be mixed.
Rule 2.5.1 a) ii
- Case 5 Two female players wear a headband, four players wear caps, and the remaining players wear no headgear.
- RULING: This is legal. They may wear a mixture of headgear, but each type must be alike in colour and style.
Rule 2.5.1 a) ii
- Case 6 F6 is wearing a helmet while in the field on defence.
- RULING: This is legal. Any defensive player may wear an approved helmet of similar colour to the team uniform.
Rule 2.5.1 a) iii.
- Case 7 The umpire notices that some of a team's players, including F1, are wearing long white sleeve undershirts.
- RULING: This is legal. It is not mandatory that all players wear an undershirt but if more than one player does wear one, they must be alike. F1 cannot wear white if other players have a different colour undershirt.
Rule 2.5.1 b) i.
- Case 8 Is it permissible for players to wear a warming (compression) sleeve in lieu of an undershirt?
- RULING: Yes, but both arms must be covered with either two warming sleeves or an undershirt in the same manner as other players who may be wearing long sleeved undershirts, if only one warming sleeve is worn, it must be worn with an undershirt that covers both arms.
Rule 2.5.1 b) ii
- Case 9 In the top of the 1st inning, the Umpire notices that 6 of the players of Team A who are on defence are wearing red long-sleeved undershirts, 2 players are not wearing undershirts and one player is wearing blue short sleeved undershirt. The Umpire advised the coach of Team A that the player wearing the blue short sleeved undershirt must remove it. The Umpire advises the coach that the player may either wear a red long-sleeved undershirt or no undershirt.
- RULING: This action is correct
Rule 2.5.1 b) i

- Case 10 The team colours are red and white. One player is wearing red sliding pants while another is wearing blue sliding pants. Is this legal?
- RULING: No. Sliding pants, if worn by more than one player, must be alike in style and colour except temporary Snap-On or Velcro sliding pads.
Rule 2.5.1 c)
- Case 11 One of the participating teams has had several injuries. One of the starting players is wearing a plastic cast on his wrist, while another has a knee brace with exposed metal.
- RULING: The player with the cast (plaster, metal, or other hard substance in its final form) would not be allowed to play unless the apparatus is removed. The player would still not be permitted to play even if the hard substance were covered with soft material. The player with the knee brace would be allowed to play, if the brace were adequately covered by soft material, taped, and approved by the Plate Umpire.
Rule 2.5.1 f)
- Case 12 A player is discovered wearing a neck chain under his playing uniform. Is this permitted?
- RULING: Yes, provided the umpire does not deem the neck chain, or any similar adornments of any kind, to be distracting to opposing players. If an approved medical alert bracelet or necklace is worn and it is considered to be distracting it must be taped to the body in such a manner that the medical alert information remains visible. Players and team management should be responsible for their own safety.
Rule 2.5.1 g)
- Case 13 A player is discovered wearing (a) a neck chain under their playing uniform; or (b) looped earrings which are taped to the ear lobe.
- RULING: This is allowed provided the Umpire does not judge the adornments to be distracting. If judged to be distracting the umpire can ask that the item be removed or covered.
Rule 2.5.1 g)
- Case 14 A player is discovered wearing (a) a medical alert necklace under their playing uniform or (b) a medical alert bracelet on their wrist.
- RULING: Legal. Medical alert bracelets or necklaces if judged to be distracting are to be taped but in such a manner so that all medical information is visible.
Rule 2.5.1 g)

Rule 3 PARTICIPANTS

3.1.9 ILLEGAL RE-ENTRY

- Case 1 F1 is substituted from the game in the 3rd inning and legally re-enters in the 5th inning. In the 6th inning, F1 is again substituted from the game but then re-enters in the bottom of the 7th inning. F1 throws one pitch and the opposing coach then alerts the umpire.
- RULING: This is an Illegal Re-entry, as a starting player may only re-enter the game on one occasion.
Rule 3.1.9 b); 3.2.8 Effect Illegal re-entry

3.1.10 AN ILLEGAL SUBSTITUTE

Case 1 S2, an unreported substitute runner, enters the game at 2nd with one out. S2 steals to 3rd on the first pitch. Prior to the next pitch the defence appeal that S2 is an illegal substitute.

RULING: By entering the game as an Illegal Substitute (unreported), S2 becomes an Ineligible Player who may continue to sit on the bench or coach in the coach's box. S1 may no longer participate in the game as a player. The advance is legal and no one is called out.

Rule 3.1.10 a); 3.1.11; 3.2.8 d); Effect 3.2.8 (Unreported Substitute)

Case 2 Smith, playing at third base, cuts his hand while in the dugout, so the coach decides to use Brown, a substitute, as a replacement fielder in the next innings while Smith receives treatment. Brown enters the field without reporting to the Umpire. After a pitch has been thrown the defensive team lodges an appeal.

RULING: Although Brown may legally act as a Replacement Player for Smith; Brown has done so without reporting to the umpire. As such, Brown is declared an Illegal Player.

Rule 3.1.10 b); 3.1.8 a); 3.2.6 c) & d)

Case 3 In the top half of the 2nd inning, Brown slides into a base and opens up a wound that begins to bleed. As the bleeding cannot be controlled, Jones is reported as a Replacement Player for Brown. After the elapse of the time permitted for Jones to remain in the game, the bleeding has still not been controlled, so Jones continues in the game. However, the coach fails to notify the umpire that Jones is staying in the game.

RULING: Provided Jones has not previously been in the game Jones may continue in the game as a substitute for Brown, subject to the umpire being notified of this fact. As the Umpire was not notified on this occasion, if the opposition lodge an appeal then Jones would be declared an Illegal Substitute. Rule 3.1.10 f); 3.2.6 c) & d)

3.1.11 INELIGIBLE PLAYER

Case 1 Smith is removed from the game for being an unreported substitute in the 2nd inning. In the 4th inning Smith goes to the 3rd base coach's box to give direction to his teammates. The defensive team now appeal that Smith should not be allowed to coach, as he has been removed from the game.

RULING: Smith may continue to act as a base coach, as he was only removed from the game, not ejected. A player, removed from the game by the umpire, may no longer participate as a player, but may coach.

Rule 3.1.11; 3.1.18

Case 2 S2, an unannounced substitute runner, enters the game at 2B with one out. S2 steals 3B on the first pitch and then scores when B6 singles. Prior to the next pitch, the defence appeals and informs the umpire that S2 was an illegal substitute.

RULING: S2 becomes an Ineligible Player who may continue to sit on the bench or coach in the coach's box. They may no longer participate in the game as a player. The advance is legal and the run scores. No one is called out.

Rule 3.1.11; 3.1.18; 3.2.8 d); 3.2.8 Effect

3.1.12 INELIGIBLE REPLACEMENT PLAYER

Case 1 In the top half of the 2nd inning, Brown slides into a base and opens up a wound that begins to bleed. As the bleeding cannot be controlled, Jones, who is currently in the batting line-up, is reported as the Replacement Player for Brown.

RULING: Because Jones is currently in the batting line-up he is regarded as an Ineligible Replacement Player, so the Umpire should advise the coach of this fact and request he use another player who is eligible to enter as a Replacement Player.
Rule 3.1.12 b); 3.2.6 e)

Case 2 In the 5th inning, Jones is cut and bleeding as the result of a play. His coach asks to put in a Replacement Player because the bleeding cannot be stopped in a reasonable amount of time. The coach asks the umpire if he can use Drew, who was a starting player but was substituted for in the 3rd inning.

RULING: The Umpire says no since Drew is still eligible to re-enter the game. A substitute not in the game or a starting player who has been twice substituted for may be used as a Replacement Player.
Rule 3.1.12 c); 3.2.6 e)

3.1.14 LINE-UP CARD

Case 1 The line-up card is completed and submitted to the Umpire at the start of a game. The Umpire then hands the card to the scorer and asks him to hold the card until the end of the game.

RULING: The Umpire is in error. He must retain the card for the duration of the game in order to keep accurate track of substitutions and re-entries.
Rule 3.1.14

3.1.16 OFFENSIVE PLAYER ONLY (“OPO”)

Case 1 Brown is batting in the third batting position and playing first base. In the fourth inning the coach notifies the umpire that Edwards, the DP, will be fielding at first and Wilson, the FLEX player, will be staying in the game in his original fielding position. What now becomes of Brown?

RULING: Because Edwards is entitled to both bat & field under the DP rule, Edwards continues to bat for himself. Brown is permitted to stay in the batting line-up as an “Offensive Player Only”, but no longer allowed to play on defence.
Rule 3.1.16

3.1.17 RE-ENTRY

Case 1 At the top of the 3rd inning Smith (an original starting player) is scheduled to bat. The coach legally substitutes him with Brown. Brown completes his turn at bat and then enters the field on defence in the bottom half of the 3rd inning. After 2 are out, the coach legally takes Brown out of the game and brings Smith back.

RULING: The action of bringing Smith back into the game is known as a ‘Re-Entry’. Only an original starting player may return to the game after being substituted. Each of the original starting players may leave the game at any time and then re-enter the game at a later time. Each of the starting players may only re-enter the game on one occasion.
Rule 3.1.17

Case 2 A team manager tells the Plate Umpire that substitute Jones is batting for Smith and Smith will re-enter on defence when the team next goes on defence.

RULING: The Umpire shall accept the substitution of Jones hitting for Smith; however, no substitution (including re-entry) should be reported to the umpire until the substitution is actually made.

NOTE: Inform the manager to make the re-entry when the actual substitution occurs.
Rule 3.1.17; 3.2.3 e); 3.2.8 c)

3.1.21 SUBSTITUTE

Case 1 Substitute S1 reports and takes a position in the batter's box for B6. Before a pitch is thrown the manager replaces S1 with S2. Can S1 come back in the game later?

RULING: Yes, since S1 is not officially in the game until a legal or illegal pitch has been thrown, or a play has been made. S1 was never in the game and can be substituted later in the game.

Rule 3.1.21; 3.2.8 c)

3.1.24 WITHDRAWN PLAYER

Case 1 Williams splits the webbing of his hand while fielding and has to be replaced, as his hand is bleeding profusely. The coach elects to send Curtis, a listed substitute, into the game to replace Williams.

RULING: Because he has left the field to receive attention on the bleeding hand, Williams becomes a Withdrawn Player for the period of time permitted under the Replacement Player rule.

Rule 3.1.24; 3.2.6 a) to c)

3.2 LINE UP AND ROSTERS

3.2.1 LINE-UP CARDS

Case 1 Team 'A', batting first, only has 8 available players when the line-up card is due to be submitted because Bloggs has not yet arrived at the game. In order to prevent forfeiting, the coach lists Bloggs in the number 9 batting spot, hoping that he will arrive by the time it is his turn to bat, or before the team must take the field. Bloggs arrives after the first batter has been retired.

RULING: This is illegal. Bloggs should not have been listed as a starting player if he were not present at the time the line-up card was submitted.

Rule 3.2.1 b)

Case 2 The coach of Team 'A' lists his starting line-up prior to a game. He also lists his substitutes, including Smith who has not yet arrived at the field. The umpire is aware that Smith is not in the dugout.

RULING: Smith's name should be deleted from the list of substitutes, as he cannot be listed unless he is in the team area and in uniform.

Rule 3.2.1(c)

Case 3 Prior to the start of a game, the coach of Team 'A' lists his starting line-up. He does not list any reserves because he does not know who will be showing up. In the 4th inning Jones arrives, so the coach wants to put him into the game as a substitute for F8.

RULING: Jones may play. Eligible reserves need not be listed on the original line-up card but must be added when they enter the game.

Rule 3.2.1 c)

Case 4 The line-up card is prepared before the game and line-ups are exchanged at the pre-game meeting. The coach of team 'A' then advises the Umpire that the uniform number of a 'B' team member does not match the number written on the card. What should the umpire do?

RULING: There is no penalty for an incorrect uniform number being listed, so the Umpire should simply arrange for the number to be changed on the card and the game continued.

Rule 3.2.1 e)

3.2.2 PLAYERS

Case 1 B9 is injured while sliding into 2nd. The team has no available substitutes, so they carry him to his position in right field and lean him against the fence for the last inning.

RULING: This is legal. Provided the team has the correct number of players, they may be stationed anywhere on fair territory and the game can continue.

Rule 3.2.2

Case 2 Team 'A' starts the game with nine players. The coach wishes to enter a substitute in the game, as a DP, in the 2nd inning and place him at the end of the batting order.

RULING: The substitution is illegal. The DP must be listed on the line-up card prior to the start of the game before the plate umpire has approved the starting line-up at the pre-game meeting.

Rule 3.2.2 a)

Case 3 Team 'A' has 9 players and is ready to play but Team 'B' has only 8 players. Is it necessary for Team 'A' to take the field and throw one pitch to make the forfeit legal?

RULING: No. However, make sure that Team 'A' really does have enough players (have they submitted their line-up?). Then, just sign the scorecard.

Rule 3.2.2 a) & Effect

Case 4 With R8 on 3rd and R9 on 2nd, the defence decides to pitch around the edges of the plate to B1. F3 moves to a position behind F2 to prevent R8 scoring on a wild pitch.

RULING: The Umpire should have all defensive players in fair territory, except F2, who must be in the catcher's box prior to the pitch.

Rule 3.2.2 b)

Case 5 The coach of Team 'A' wishes to place all his players in the infield. Can he do this?

RULING: Yes. Players may be stationed anywhere they like, as long as they have both feet in fair territory. F1 must take his place on the pitcher's plate and F2 must be in the catcher's box.

Rule 3.2.2 b)

Case 6 A team starts a game with 9 players. During the game they lose a player due to injury and have no substitutes to replace him.

RULING: The game is forfeited to the opponent. A team must always have the required number of eligible players in the line-up to continue a game.

Rule 3.2.2 c) & Effect

3.2.3 STARTING PLAYERS

Case 1 The coach inspects the line-up card at the pre-game meeting and the coach and Plate Umpire approve the line-up. Two minutes later and prior to the first pitch of the game, the coach advises that he wants to replace one of his players. Does this become a substitution or a change to the original starting line-up?

RULING: The starting line-up is official once it has been inspected and approved by the Plate Umpire and coach at the pre-game meeting. Any change after that becomes a substitution, even if the game has not started. In this case, it is a substitution.
Rule 3.2.3 a); 3.2.8 a)

Case 2 The line-up is prepared half an hour before the game is scheduled to start. During the pre-game warm up, F3 is injured, so the coach advises a replacement for him at the pre-game meeting. Does the replacement become a starting player?

RULING: Yes.
Rule 3.2.3 c)

Case 3 The line-up cards are being reviewed by the teams at the pre-game meeting, at which time the defensive coach advises that he wishes to start the game with the DP playing the defensive position of the FLEX.

RULING: The change is legal, if the coach reports the change to the umpire. The FLEX is still allowed to re-enter the game at any time.

NOTE: The starting FLEX may re-enter the game on one occasion, just as any starting player may do.

Rule 3.2.3 e); 3.2.4 b) iii; 3.2.5

Case 4 The DP hits a pitched ball for a double. The coach then substitutes the DP with a pinch runner. Can the DP return to the game?

RULING: Yes, the starting DP may re-enter the game on one occasion, just as any starting player may do.

Rule 3.2.3 e)

Case 5 In the 1st inning, with 2 out and R1 on 1st, B4 (Edwards) is announced on the public address system. Just then, the manager decides to legally substitute B4 with S1 (Smith). Smith strikes out. In the 3rd inning, Edwards is sent into the game as a substitute to run for Smith.

RULING: This is legal. Members of the starting line-up may be substituted from the game and re-enter one time, provided they occupy the same batting position they held when originally in the line-up.

Rule 3.2.3 e)

Case 6 F1 pitches for 2 innings and is replaced by S1. In the 3rd inning, F1 returns to the game before being replaced by S3. S3 is then replaced by S5 in the 6th inning. (a) Are these substitutions legal? (b) Can F1 or S1 return to the game in the 7th inning?

RULING: (a) Yes. Provided they all bat in the same order in the line-up. (b) No. Only the original starting players may re-enter on one occasion.

Rule 3.2.3 e); 3.2.8 a)

Case 7 F1 is substituted from the game in the 3rd inning and legally re-enters in the 5th inning. F1 is again substituted from the game in the 6th inning. He subsequently re-enters in the bottom of the 7th inning and throws one pitch. The opposing coach now appeals to the umpire.

RULING: F1 and his manager/coach are ejected, as this is a violation of the re-entry rule. A starting player may only re-enter on one occasion.

Rule 3.2.3 e); 3.3; 3.1.9 b); Effects 3.2.8 Illegal re-entry

Case 8 F1 comes to bat but is legally substituted by S2. S2 singles and is then legally replaced by S3. When the team returns to play defence, they try to re-enter F1 to pitch but the Umpire will not allow him to re-enter.

RULING: The Umpire was incorrect. F1, as a starting player, can re-enter one time, regardless of the number of substitutes that have played for him. However, F1 and all his substitutes must enter the game in the same position in the batting line-up.

Rule 3.2.3 e)

Case 9 Wilson is the starting shortstop and batting 7th in the line-up. In the 2nd inning Smith enters the game as a legal substitute for Wilson. In the 4th inning Wilson re-enters the game at shortstop but in the number 2 batting position, while Smith moves to right field replacing Brown (number 2 batter in the line-up). Two innings later the opposing team informs the plate umpire of both Wilson and Smith being in the game.

RULING: Wilson becomes an Illegal Re-entry, as the starter and his substitute cannot be in the game at the same time. When brought to the Umpire's attention, the player listed in the wrong batting position (Wilson) and the manager/coach are ejected.

Rule 3.2.3 e); 3.2.8 b); Effects 3.2.8 Illegal re-entry; 3.3

Case 10 With 2 out and R1 on 1st, S1 replaces B4. Before S1 completes his turn at bat, R1 is called out for leaving 1st early. In the next inning the coach decides to let B4 bat. Is this legal?

RULING: Yes. Provided he was in the starting line-up, he may re-enter the game once and replace S1 who had taken his place. S1 was, however, officially in the game and cannot re-enter.

Rule 3.2.3 e); 3.2.8 a)

3.2.4 DESIGNATED PLAYER (DP)

Case 1 Jones, the DP, is batting for Smith, the FLEX, who is pitching. After several innings Smith's pitching begins to become ineffective, so the coach replaces Jones with Brown (a legal substitute), to enable Jones to go to the bullpen to warm up. After a few minutes of warming up, Jones re-enters the game and replaces Smith in the pitching position. Both Brown and Smith leave the game. Are all these moves legal?

RULING: Yes, provided Jones re-entered in his original position in the batting line-up. When Brown entered the game, he became the DP. Jones (the starting DP) may legally re-enter the game on one occasion, and because Smith left the game the game continues with nine players. Jones may legally play offence and defence.

Rule 3.2.4

- Case 2 The FLEX is injured and must leave the game. The DP replaces the FLEX at the shortstop position.
- RULING: This is a legal change. The DP may play the game at any defensive position at any time during the game. The FLEX is considered to have left the game and can be either substituted for (not done in this situation), or the team can revert to nine players, as done here. When the DP replaces the FLEX, the team line-up is reduced from 10 to 9 players.
Rule 3.2.4 b); 3.2.5
- Case 3 The DP begins the game playing offence for the FLEX, who is playing at left field. In the third inning the DP plays at left field and the FLEX leaves the game. Is this legal?
- RULING: Yes, the DP may play defence for the FLEX, provided the change is reported to the umpire. Failure to report the change subjects the DP to the provisions of the unreported substitutions rule.
Rule 3.2.4 b) ii.
- Case 4 The FLEX is in the pitching (F1) position.
The DP plays third base in the 2nd inning and second base in the 4th inning.
- RULING: The moves are all legal. The DP may play defence for any player, and that player becomes an Offensive Player Only (OPO) who continues to bat but does not play defence. Rule 3.2.4 b) i.
- 3.2.5 FLEX PLAYER (FLEX)**
- Case 1 F8 is batting second and the DP is batting fifth in the line-up. In the 2nd inning, the coach wishes to have the FLEX bat for F8, as he believes the FLEX can bat anywhere in the line-up, provided the starting player that the FLEX is batting for leaves the game. Is this legal?
- RULING: The proposal is illegal and should not be accepted by the umpire.
Rule 3.2.5 c); 3.2.4 c)
- Case 2 The defensive player (FLEX) for whom the DP is batting, starts the game in the pitching position. In the 5th inning the FLEX bats for the DP.
- RULING: This is a legal replacement, provided the change is reported to the Umpire. This change then means the DP has left the game.
Rule 3.2.5 c)
- Case 3 The FLEX legally acts as a pinch runner for the DP. Later in the game, the DP re-enters, and the FLEX (a) returns to the #10 spot in the starting line-up, or (b) leaves the game.
- RULING: In both situations the change of the FLEX and DP is legal, if reported to the Plate Umpire. Note that in (a) the FLEX is not considered to have left the game and as such the FLEX's movement is not a substitution. In (b) the team goes to nine players and the FLEX could re-enter the game later, provided he had not already been substituted for earlier in the game.
Rule 3.2.5 c)

- Case 4 A team is using 10 players in their line-up with the DP batting third. The FLEX is playing right field. In the first and third innings, the DP gets on base and in each case the FLEX is put in to run for him. Is this legal?
- RULING: This is legal in every case, provided the change is reported to the umpire. However, after the starting DP re-enters in the first inning and is then replaced by the FLEX to run again in the third inning, a substitute must be entered for the DP, or the FLEX could continue to remain in the DP's batting position. If the starting player re-entered now, it would be an Illegal Re-entry.
Rule 3.2.5 c) ii; Effect 3.2.8 Illegal Re-entry c)
- Case 5 The game starts with a DP. In the 5th inning, the FLEX bats for the DP. In the 6th inning, the coach announces that the DP is re-entering into his original batting position. The coach (a) removes the FLEX from the game, or (b) moves the FLEX to the #10 position in the line-up.
- RULING: In both case the re-entry of the DP is a legal return. The coach has the option of either removing the FLEX from the game, or having the FLEX resume his original spot in the #10 position in the line-up.
Rule 3.2.5 c) ii.
- Case 6 The DP plays defence for the shortstop (not the FLEX) in the third inning. The coach then inserts the FLEX to bat for the shortstop.
- RULING: The DP may legally play defence for the shortstop, who then becomes an Offensive Player Only (OPO). The FLEX batting for the original shortstop (not the DP) is illegal, resulting in the ejection of both the FLEX and the coach.
Rule 3.2.5 c); Effect 3.2.8 Illegal re-entry e)
- Case 7 The DP is batting for the FLEX. In the 4th inning, S1 enters the game as a substitute for the FLEX. Later, in the same inning, the coach informs the umpire that the FLEX is re-entering the game and will be batting for the DP.
- RULING: The changes are all legal. The FLEX can exit and re-enter the game once, provided he either returns to the #10 position in the line-up or he occupies the batting position of the original DP upon his re-entry.
Rule 3.2.5 c)
- Case 8 A team decides to legally re-enter the FLEX on defence, without reporting the change to the umpire.
- RULING: This change is treated as an Illegal Substitution. The FLEX is removed from the game and ruled ineligible if the change is brought to the umpire's attention by the offended coach after one pitch (legal or illegal) has been thrown and before the offensive team notifies the plate umpire. The coach can replace the FLEX with a proper substitute whenever he wishes to revert back to ten players in the line-up.
Rule 3.2.5 c) ii; 3.2.8 d); Effects 3.2.8 Unreported Substitute; 3.3

3.2.6 THE REPLACEMENT PLAYER

Case 1 In the top of the 2nd inning, Bloggs slides safely into 2nd and gashes his leg, resulting in considerable bleeding. The umpire requests the coach to replace Bloggs, as it is apparent that the bleeding will take some time to be attended to. Gill replaces Bloggs who, after treatment, returns to the game at the commencement of the bottom of the 3rd inning. Gill subsequently enters the game again as a substitute for Smith in the 6th inning.

RULING: This is legal. When Gill came into the game for Bloggs he was only a 'Replacement Player', not a substitute. After Bloggs returned and Gill left the game, Gill was still classified as a substitute player who could legally enter the game at a later stage.

Rule 3.2.6

Case 2 R1 slides safely into 3rd but, in doing so, grazes his leg. The umpire calls 'Time' and notices that the wound has caused considerable bleeding. What action should be taken?

RULING: The game should be delayed enabling the wound to be treated and covered. If the bleeding does not stop within a reasonable time, or there is blood on the uniform, then the player must be withdrawn from the game to receive further treatment and/or change his uniform. He may return to the game when the bleeding has stopped and/or his uniform has been replaced.

Rule 3.2.6 a) & b); 3.1.24

Case 3 During the game, a player receives an injury that causes severe bleeding. After attending to the wound, he replaces his uniform shirt with one that has a different number on it. The opposing coach objects to this, stating that it will confuse his scorer.

RULING: There can be no objection. The new number should be noted on the line-up card and the game continued with no penalty applied.

Rule 3.2.6 b)

Case 4 In the top of the 3rd inning, Jones slides safely into 3rd causing his leg to bleed. Smith enters the game at 3rd as a Replacement Player for Jones and subsequently scores. Jones is unable to take his place on the field at 2nd in the bottom of the 3rd inning, so Smith takes the field and completes two plays for the inning. When it is Jones' turn to bat in the top of the 4th inning, he still is unable to take his place, so Smith bats and gets a double.

RULING: All of the actions of Smith as a Replacement Player are legal. He may bat, run, and field for the withdrawn player (Jones) until he returns to the game, or until the end of the completed 4th inning, whichever occurs first.

Rule 3.2.6 c)

Case 5 Smith, a listed substitute, legally substitutes for Brown in the top of the 2nd inning. Brown re-enters the game in the bottom of the 2nd inning, replacing Smith.

In the top of the 4th inning, Jones slides into a base and opens an old injury on his leg that begins to bleed. Smith now enters the game again as a Replacement Player for Jones. Jones is due to return to the game at the top of the 6th inning but is unable to do so, as he has been taken to hospital for treatment. The Umpire requests the coach to replace Smith with a legal substitute but there is none available.

Rule 3.2.6 c); 3.2.2; 1.2.2 h)

- Case 6 In the bottom of the 2nd inning, Jones, a legal substitute who entered the game in the top of the 2nd inning, must leave the game due to a bleeding injury. Smith, a listed substitute, takes his place as a Replacement Player. After treatment, Jones attempts to return to the game (a) in the 3rd inning, or (b) in the 6th inning.
- RULING: In (a) Jones may return to the game, as it is still within the time allowed for the return of a Withdrawn Player. In (b) Jones may not return. At the completion of the time permitted for a Withdrawn Player to return to the game, the player becomes subject to the re-entry and substitution rules. Because Jones was not an original starting player, he is unable to re-enter the game.
Rule 3.2.6 c); 3.2.8 f)
- Case 7 Jones leaves the game in the top of the 2nd inning, to attend to a bleeding injury. Smith, a listed substitute, enters the game as a Replacement Player. Can Jones return to the game, with Smith leaving the game and able to return later as a legal substitute, (a) with one out in the bottom of the 2nd inning, or (b) at the beginning of the 3rd inning, or (c) at the beginning of the 4th inning?
- RULING: Jones may return legally in all cases. Provided the bleeding has stopped and the injury covered, a withdrawn player may return to the game at any time up to the completion of the inning in progress and the completion of the following inning. Should he wish to return beyond this time, he would be subject to the substitution and re-entry rules.
Rule 3.2.6 c)
- Case 8 R1 slides into base and grazes his leg. Upon returning to the dugout at the end of the inning it is apparent that there is considerable bleeding that requires some attention. The coach decides to send a Replacement Player on to play defence without advising the Umpire. The offensive team discovers the replacement after a pitch has been thrown, so appeal to the umpire.
- RULING: The Umpire must be advised whenever a Replacement Player enters the game. As this was an unreported Replacement Player, then that player becomes subjected to the provisions of the unreported substitutions rule. Being an unreported substitute and a pitch has been thrown; the Replacement Player will be declared Ineligible. Rule 3.2.6 d); 3.3; Effects 3.2.8 b) Unreported Replacement Player
- Case 9 In the third inning Smith, the starting shortstop and batting number 2 in the batting order, is replaced by a legal substitute (Edwards). In the next inning, Jones (also a starting player and batting number 6 in the batting order) must leave the game to attend to a bleeding injury, so the coach enters Smith as a Replacement Player for Jones. The opposition team suggests to the umpire that this is an Illegal Re-entry, as both Smith and his substitute (Edwards) cannot be in the line-up at the same time, and when Smith does re-enter, he can only do so in his original number 2 position in the batting order, not the number 6 position.
- RULING: The opposition is correct. As Smith is a starting player and eligible to re-enter, they cannot enter as a replacement player. Smith is an Illegal Replacement Player Smith, and the coach are ejected from the game.
Rule 3.1.12 c); 3.2.6 e) iii & Effect; Effect 3.2.8 Illegal re-entry d)

Case 10 Smith, a listed substitute, legally substitutes for Brown in the top of the 2nd inning. Brown re-enters the game in the bottom of the 2nd inning, replacing Smith. In the top of the 4th inning, Jones slides into a base and opens an old injury that begins to bleed. He is attended to on the diamond, but the bleeding does not stop. The coach advises the umpire that Jones will leave the game and Smith will take his place.

RULING: This is legal. Although Smith has already been in the game as a substitute, he may now enter the game again as an eligible Replacement Player for Jones. Smith may legally stay in the game until Jones returns, or until the end of the inning in progress and the following complete inning (i.e., the 6th inning), whichever comes first.

Rule 3.2.6 e) ii; 3.2.6 c)

Case 11 Brown, playing 2nd, is legally substituted for in the 3rd inning. He re-enters in the 4th inning and is subsequently substituted out of the game in the 5th inning. In the 6th inning, Jones injures himself and must be withdrawn from the game as his leg is bleeding profusely. The coach advises the Umpire that Brown will be the Replacement Player. The Umpire refuses the request on the grounds that Brown cannot re-enter the game on more than one occasion.

RULING: The Umpire was incorrect. Although Brown has previously been in the game, he may act as an eligible Replacement Player for the remainder of the inning in progress and for the following complete inning.

Rule 3.2.6 e) iii; 3.2.6 c)

Case 12 In the 5th inning, Player A is cut and bleeding as the result of a play. Player A's coach asks to put in a Replacement Player because the bleeding cannot be stopped in a reasonable amount of time. The coach asks the umpire if they can use Player B, who was a starting player but was substituted for in the 3rd inning. The umpire says no since Player B is still eligible to re-enter the game. A substitute not in the game or a starting player who has been twice substituted for may be used as a Replacement Player.

RULING: This is a correct action by the umpire.

Rule 3.2.6 e) iii; 3.1.19

3.1.23 TEMPORARY RUNNER

Case 1 In the 1st inning, Adams, the first batter in the line-up, hits a single, Brown, the second batter, flies out, Charles, the third batter, hits a single so we now have runners on 1st and 2nd. Davis, batting fourth, flies out for the second out. Edwards, the catcher is batting fifth and hits a single. Bases are now loaded with 2 out. The Offensive Team's coach approaches the Plate Umpire and tells him that he is exercising his option and is putting in Brown as a Temporary Runner for Edwards. Is this permissible?

RULING: While it is permissible and optional for the coach to use a Temporary Runner, it cannot be Brown (the second batter in the line-up). Davis, in the 4th spot of the batting order, is the player now scheduled to bat last in the line-up and is not on base, so he is the player who must be used as the Temporary Runner.

Rule 3.1.23; 3.2.7

Note: Softball Australia Championship Regulations also apply at Australian Championships any eligible player listed on the line-up card not in the next 4 batters, with fully correctable situations.

Case 2 With 2 out, the catcher Smith reaches 1st base. Brown, the next batter, takes a called strike as Smith successfully steals to 2nd base. The offensive team coach now requests "Time" and advises the umpire that Wilson, the person scheduled to bat last in this innings, will be coming on as a Temporary Runner for Smith. As 1 pitch has already been thrown to Wilson, should the umpire agree to the coach's request?

RULING: Yes. Although it is optional for a Temporary Runner to be used for the catcher, the option may be taken at any time after the 2nd out has occurred.

Rule 3.2.7; 3.1.23

Note: Softball Australia Championship Regulations also apply at Australian Championships any eligible player listed on the line-up card not in the next 4 batters, with fully correctable situations.

Case 3 Does the use of a Temporary Runner need to be announced?

RULING: There is no requirement under the rules to report this change to the Plate Umpire. However, time needs to be requested and granted after all play in progress has been completed before the change takes place to protect the runners and advise the scorer.

Process: While "time" is called the Plate Umpire should ensure that the proper player from the batting order is used as the Temporary Runner. If the correct player from the batting order is not used this is correctable and there is no penalty.

If an unreported substitution or illegal re-entry is used as a Temporary Runner, it is correctable in that the correct player must be placed on base. The unannounced substitution or illegal re-entry rules could apply to an incorrect Temporary Runner.

NOTE: Under Softball Australia Championship rules the Plate Umpire and then the Statistician must be advised as the statistics are credited to that player. Any eligible player on the line-up card can be used (not ruled ineligible), this includes any substitutes, starting players and substitutes that have been substituted and the flex player. Any incorrect TR is a correctable situation without penalty.

Rule 3.2.7; 3.1.2. and Softball Australia Championship regulations

Case 4 R2 on 3B, R3 on 2B, 1 out. S1 hits for B4 (the catcher). S1 reaches base on an error. R2 scores and R3 remains at 2B. B5 strikes out for the 2nd out. The offensive team coach announces that B4 re-enters and immediately requests that B5 be placed on 1B as the Temporary Runner.

RULING: At the time of the request S1 is not the catcher of record, the re-entered B4 is not officially in the game until a pitch has been thrown or a play made. The Umpire correctly rules that B4 (the catcher of record) must be on base for at least one pitch before being replaced by the Temporary Runner.

Rule 3.2.7; 3.2.8 c)

3.2.8 ENTERING THE GAME (SUBSTITUTIONS)

Case 1 F9 is substituted from the game for the second time in the 3rd inning and returns to the field as the third base coach. Is this legal?

RULING: Yes. A starting player substituted from the game on two occasions may no longer participate as a player. However, he may act as a Replacement Player or as a Coach.

Rule 3.2.8 a)

- Case 2 Fox, who is playing 1st, is legally substituted for by Brown in the top of the 3rd inning. After making several errors, Brown is legally substituted for by Smith. In the bottom of the 3rd inning, Smith singles. Fox now returns as a substitute runner for Smith and subsequently scores. Fox remains in the game but moves to 3rd. In the top of the 5th inning, Wilson replaces Fox.
- RULING: All of these substitutions are legal. Multiple substitutions for the listed starting player (Fox) are allowed, provided they all occupy the same batting position. Fox may re-enter on one occasion, provided he returns to his original batting position, and can play any defensive position. Neither Brown nor Smith may re-enter the game after having been substituted.
Rule 3.2.8 a); 3.2.3 e)
- Case 3 B1 leads off the 4th inning with a single to F8. His manager informs the umpire that S2 will run for him but B1 will re-enter on defence in the next half inning. Is this allowed, or does the manager have to report the re-entry when his team takes the field?
- RULING: This is not allowed. The re-entry of B1 must be reported at the time he enters the defence. It is possible for the manager to change his mind, or to forget about B1 re-entering on defence. Each change should be handled separately at the time it is made.
Rule 3.2.8 c)
- Case 4 R5 on 1st with 2 out, when S1 legally replaces B6. Before S1 finishes his turn at bat R5 is called out to end the inning. S1 was not charged with a time at bat, so is he considered to be officially in the game?
- RULING: Yes. S1 became a player in the game as soon as the play was made on R5 or a pitch was thrown, whichever came first.
Rule 3.2.8 c)
- Case 5 B6 is scheduled to bat but S1, an unreported substitute, takes his position in the batter's box. Before a pitch is thrown, the defence appeal that the substitution is illegal, as it was not notified to the umpire.
- RULING: The appeal is disallowed. A player is not in violation of the substitution rule until one pitch has been thrown. Allow the coach to notify the substitution and continue the game.
Rule 3.2.8 c)
- Case 6 A runner twists his ankle sliding into 2nd. Both managers agree to a courtesy runner, with the injured player returning to the field in the next inning.
- RULING: This is illegal. There can be no courtesy runner, only a substitute runner is allowed.
Rule 3.2.8 a) & c)
- Case 7 The team line-up, in batting order, is Andrews, Baker, Charles, Davis, Edwards, etc. Charles leads off the 4th inning and gets a single base hit. Davis bats and takes a called strike. At this point the coach advises the umpire that Baker will be substituting for Charles. The umpire accepts the change, play continues, and Davis takes a second called strike. The defence now appeal that Baker is, in fact, an Illegal Runner.
- RULING: The defence is correct, as Baker did not have a legal right to be a substitute for Charles, as he is currently in the line-up. The umpire erred in accepting the substitution, but this does not over-ride the fact that Baker is an Illegal Runner. As such, Baker is declared Ineligible and a legal substitute replaces him on base. Nobody is out.
Rule 3.1.8 b); 3.3; Effects 3.2.8 Illegal Player

- Case 8 R1 on 3rd and R3 on 1st when S1, an unreported substitute, steps into the batter's box. On the first pitch, a ball, R3 steals 2nd. S1 swings at and misses the next pitch. The defence now advise the umpire that S1 is an illegal substitute.
RULING: S1 is ruled ineligible and removed from the game. The proper batter, or a legal substitute, will take his place in the batter's box and assume the 1-1 count. Nobody is out and the advance of R3 to 2nd is legal.
Rule 3.2.8 c) & d); Effects 3.2.8 Illegal Substitute d) ii; 3.1.8 a); 3.3
- Case 9 R1 on 3rd and R2 on 2nd. S1, an unreported substitute, singles, and scores both runners. Prior to the next pitch the defence appeal S1 as an illegal substitute.

RULING: S1 is called out, ruled ineligible and removed from the game. The runners are returned to 2nd & 3rd respectively.
Rule 3.2.8 c) & d); Effects 3.2.8 Illegal Substitute d) iii; 3.1.8 a); 3.3
- Case 10 S5, who has previously been in the game but subsequently substituted by S6, takes his place in the batter's box, and runs up a 2 - 2 count. It is now brought to the plate umpire's attention that S5 is an illegal re-entry.

RULING: S5 and the manager/coach are ejected. The proper batter, or a legal substitute, must take his place in the batter's box and assume the 2 - 2 count.
Rule 3.2.8 d) & f); Effects 3.2.8 Illegal re-entry; 3.1.9 b); 3.3
- Case 11 The DP is batting in the number 9 position and the batter in position 1 in the line-up (B1) is due to bat. Either the Flex or a substitute comes off the bench, bats in the number one position and gets a hit and is on base. The change was never reported to the umpire. We now have an Illegal (unreported) substitution for B1, and they are deemed to have left the game as a result. If it is the Flex that bats for B1 it is an Illegal re-entry. The defence do not appeal at this time.
B1 now comes to bat and is therefore hitting in the number 2 position. This is an Illegal Re-entry as B1 is in a different batting position in the line-up, so B2 is deemed to have left the game. This continues for a number of batters causing a cascading effect. Under the current rules, the non-offending team can delay appealing until a number of Illegal Re-entries are in the game. The non-offending team could then decide to appeal each consecutive Illegal Re-entry which would result in not having enough offensive players or coaches to continue the game. This situation could also happen for defensive Illegal Re-entries.

Ruling: When a non-appealed Illegal Re-entry occurs and the original player remains in the game, causing consecutive batters to become Illegal Re-entries, the following rules will apply:
- The non-offending team is only permitted to appeal the most recent Illegal Re-entry. This player and the head coach shall be ejected and the Effects for an illegal substitution also apply.
 - A legal substitute must be entered into the game for the ejected player. All other Illegal Re-entries that are not the direct subject of the appeal are returned to their original position in the batting order without being considered an Illegal re-entry and all plays stand, except as noted.
- NOTE:
- When the FLEX has entered on offense for a player other than the DP; and
 - Is on base at the time of the appeal; and
 - Is not the direct subject of the appeal; then
 - The FLEX shall be removed from the base and returned to the tenth position on the line-up card. This is not an additional out, as the Flex can never play offence for any player other than the DP, original player or a substitute does not take their place.
- This is the interpretation from December 2020 on TB_2021-1. Also WBSC bulletin 14. Rule 3.2.8 EFFECT. ALSO SEE Rule 5.4.1 Case 11.

- Case 12 An Illegal Substitute enters the game as a batter in the 2nd inning. When the team goes out to play defence, the offensive team appeals the use of the Illegal Substitute.
- RULING: Even though the appeal has been made after a legal pitch has been thrown the appeal may be honoured, as an appeal for use of an Illegal Substitute may be made at any time while the Illegal Player is still in the game.
Rule 3.2.8 d); Effect 3.2.8 Illegal Substitute a), b) & c); 1.2.6 a) i.
- Case 13 B6 is scheduled to bat but S1, an unreported substitute, takes his position in the batter's box. After taking a pitch, S1 advises the umpire that he is substituting for B6. The defence now appeal that the substitution is illegal, as it was not notified to the umpire before a pitch was thrown.
- RULING: The appeal is disallowed. There is no violation of the substitution rule, as the substitution was notified to the umpire prior to the opposing team's appeal.
Rule 3.2.8 e)
- Case 14 Jones, an unreported substitute, is standing in the batter's box with a 1-1 count, when he realises, he has not reported to the umpire, so does so. Since the defensive team did not detect this, does Jones' status change from being an unreported substitute to being a legal substitute when he informs the umpire?
- RULING: Yes. By reporting prior to his opponents detecting the infraction, Jones becomes a legal substitute.
Rule 3.2.8 e)
- Case 15 Same as previous case. After S1 has tripled and all runners have scored, one pitch is pitched to the next batter. Now the illegal batter is discovered.
- RULING: S1 is ruled ineligible, removed from the game, and replaced by the original starter, or a legal substitute. No one is out and the game continues. As one pitch has been thrown to the next batter it is too late to make a legal appeal for the missed base, so all runs score.
Rule 3.3; 3.1.8; Effects 3.2.8 Illegal Substitute d) iii.
- Case 16 R1 on 1st with none out. B2 hits a ground ball to F6, who completes a double play with R1 forced at 2nd and B2 out at 1st. Before the first pitch to B3, the offensive team coach informs the umpire that F6 was an illegal player. The umpire removes F6 from the game and a legal substitute is put into shortstop.
- RULING: This is the correct action, as the illegal player participated in the play. However, the manager of the offensive team should also be given the option of (a) taking the result of the play, or (b) have R1 returned to 1st with B2 batting again, assuming the count he had prior to hitting the ball. F6 should also be declared ineligible from further participation as a player.
Rule 3.3; 3.1.8; Effects 3.2.8 Illegal Player e); 5.1.34
- Case 17 With R1 on 2nd, B2 is in the box with a 2-2 count. B2 swings at and misses the next pitch but F2 drops the ball. F2 recovers the ball in time to throw B2 out at 1st, as R1 advances to 3rd. It is now discovered that F3 was an unreported substitute, so the offensive team coach indicates he wants to exercise his option of having B2 return to the batting box. However, the defensive team argues that no option can be given, as B2 did not put the ball into play.
- RULING: Even though B2 did not hit the ball, the option can still be given, as he completed his turn at bat on the dropped 3rd strike. He would return to bat with a 2-2 count and R1 would return to 2nd.
Rule 3.3; 3.1.8; Effects 3.2.8 Illegal Player e); 5.1.34

- Case 18 With R2 on 2nd and one out, B3 flies out to F7. R2 tags up and advances to 3rd legally. B4, the next batter, takes a pitch for a called strike. At this point it is discovered that F7 is in the game illegally.
- RULING: Declare F7 an ineligible player and remove him from the game. A legal substitute, or the original starting player, will take his place at left field. As a pitch was made to B4 that is all the umpires can do, so the game continues and all play stands. Rule 3.3; 3.1.8; Effects 3.2.8 Illegal Player c), d) & e)
- Case 19 R1 on 3rd and R3 on 1st when S5, who has previously been in the game but subsequently substituted by S6, steps into the batter's box. R3 steals 2nd on the 1st pitch that is called a ball. S5 hits the next pitch for a single, scoring both runners. The fact of S5 being illegally in the game is discovered after one pitch is delivered to B6.
- RULING: S5 is ejected from the game along with the manager/coach and all plays that occurred prior to the discovery are legal. Rule 3.2.8 f); Effects 3.2.8 Illegal re-entry; 3.3
- Case 20 R1 on 1st advances toward 2nd as B2 hits the ball to F9, fielding in a shallow position. F9, realising he does not have a play on R1, attempts to retire B2 at 1st. As he releases the throw, which is wild and becomes blocked, R1 stumbles and severely sprains his ankle, resulting in him being unable to advance to third on the blocked ball. The offensive team then report that S1 will be substituting for R1.
- RULING: This is a legal substitution. Even though R1 has not touched second or third bases, S1 may enter the game and advance to the awarded base (third on the blocked ball) provided he touches second base on the way to third. Rule 3.2.8 g)
- Case 21 R1 on 1st, when B2 hits a ground ball to F6. F6 makes a wild throw to 1st, resulting in a collision between F3 and B2. The ball gets by F3 and goes out of play. The umpire then awards R1 3rd and B2 2nd. However, B2 is unable to reach 1st because of an injury received in the contact. S1 reports in the game for B2 and stands on 1st, so the umpire advises S1 to proceed to 2nd. After the umpire places a new ball in the game the defence legally appeal for B2 failing to touch 1st.
- RULING: The ball is dead as soon as it goes out of play and all runners are awarded two bases from the time of the throw. If an accident to a runner prevents him from proceeding to a base to which he is awarded, a substitute runner will be permitted and will be allowed to run the bases for the injured player.
NOTE: Because the ball was dead and because S1 had touched 1st prior to going to 2nd, this satisfies the intent of the rule.
Had the ball not gone out of play, B2 could have been tagged out for failing to touch 1st, or had S1 gone directly to 2nd, then the appeal would have been recognised. Rule 3.2.8 g)
- Case 22 The coach of a team substitutes a player as his team leaves the dugout to take their defensive positions. He fails to notify the Umpire until the substitute player takes his turn at bat.
- RULING: The use of an unreported substitute is handled as an appeal by the offended team. If the team manager, or the player in violation, informs the Umpire prior to the opposing team's appeal, there is no violation regardless how long the player was in the game. Rule 3.2.8 e); 3.3 a) i. & b)

3.3 APPEALS

Case 1 R1 on 3rd, R2 on 2nd and R3 on 1st with one out. S1, an unreported substitute, hits a triple scoring all runners but R3 misses 3rd. Before the next pitch, the defence notify the umpire that S1 is an illegal substitute. The umpire returns all runners to their original bases, calls S1 out, declares him ineligible and removes him from the game. Now the defence appeal R3 for missing 3rd.

RULING: The umpires should ignore the appeal for the missed base, as all play is nullified due to the illegal substitution.

Rule 3.3; Effects 3.2.8 Illegal Substitute d) iii.

Case 6 Can an offensive player make an appeal on a play?

RULING: Yes, offensive players may appeal for the use of Illegal Substitutions, Illegal Re-entries or for a Withdrawn Player, either leaving or returning to the game, not reporting to the umpire.

Rule 3.3 a) i. - iv. & b)

Case 7 F5, who has been ruled ineligible as a result of being an unreported substitute, returns to the game in a later innings.

RULING: Upon a legal appeal, the game is forfeited to the team not at fault.

Rule 3.3; Effects 3.2.8 Illegal Player f)

Case 8 Jones, an unreported substitute for Team 'A', is pinch-hitting and has a 1-1 count, when the opposing team appeals this to the umpire. The Umpire calls Jones out. When Team 'A' takes the field to play defence, Jones goes to 3rd. After one pitch Team 'B' protests, stating that Jones became an Ineligible Player when called out, so the game should be forfeited. Jones says he was only called out and not removed from the game.

RULING: The Umpire erred on the original call. Jones should not have been called out but removed from the game and declared ineligible. Since the Umpire did not enforce the correct penalty and Jones was still officially in the game, he should be removed at this point, declared ineligible, a legal substitute brought in for him and play is continued. Had Jones been removed from the game while he was at bat and play continued, the game would have been forfeited when Jones played on defence. The protest cannot be entertained, as the intent to protest was not lodged at the time of the incorrect penalty being applied and before the next pitch.

Rule 3.3; Effects 3.2.8 Unreported Substitute; 1.2.8; 1.2.11 a)

3.4 COACHES

Case 1 Team 'A' is on offence and ready to play. Must there be a coach in the 1st and/or 3rd coach's box before play can begin?

RULING: No. It is not mandatory to have a coach at either location.

Rule 3.4.1; 3.4.3 a)

Case 2 The umpire notices that the coach at 1st is in communication with a statistician in the stands by way of a small transceiver in his ear.

RULING: This is illegal. The coach must remove the earpiece and have no communication equipment on the field. If he refuses, he will be ejected from the game.

Rule 3.4.1 c) & Effect

Case 3 The Head Coach of a team takes ill during a game. As the game progresses one of the players acts as a base coach. Is this permitted?

RULING: Yes, this is a legal action.
Rule 3.4.1 d); 3.4.3 a)

3.4.2 HEAD COACH

Case 1 Roberts is the Head Coach of Team 'A'. He has a history of being ejected from a game, so he lists Wilson, an assistant coach, on the line-up card in an effort to prevent from being ejected.

RULING: This action is not permitted. It is always the name of the Head Coach who must be listed on the line-up card.
Rule 3.4.2 a); 3.2.1 a) iii.

Case 2 In the 4th inning the umpire has cause to eject the coach for a violation of the Re-entry rule. As the Head Coach has now left the game, should the Umpire take any action with respect to who will now assume responsibility for the team?

RULING: Yes. The name of the person who is to assume the responsibility for control of the team must be provided to the Umpire. The Umpire needs to know who to give direction to, or direct warnings to, or who to eject in the event of any further re-entry violation.
Rule 3.4.2 b)

3.4.3 BASE COACHES

Case 1 During the course of a game, the umpire notices that one team is stationing two coaches in the 1st base coach's box.

RULING: Only one coach is permitted in each of the coach's boxes. The umpire should warn the offending team and if they continue to employ two coaches in the box, one of them may be ejected.
Rule 3.4.3 b)

Case 2 B3 hits a ground ball to F8 with R2 on 2nd. The coach at 3rd moves out of his box toward home as he waves R2 around and subsequently holds R2 at 3rd. The defensive team complains to the Umpire that the coach should remain in his box.

RULING: The Umpire should ignore the complaint, as the coach is permitted to leave his box to direct R2, provided he does not interfere with the play.
Rule 3.4.3 c)

Case 3 With R1 on 3rd, the coach at 3rd base suggests to F5 that he should field deep, as B1 is a powerful hitter. In reality, the coach is trying to unsettle F5, as he wants B1 to bunt.

RULING: The Umpire should advise the coach that he might only give words of advice to his own players. If the coach continues to speak to the opposition players in this manner he should be ejected.
Rule 3.4.3 d) & Effect

Case 4 The coach at 3rd has an indicator in his hand while coaching. Is this legal?

RULING: Yes, the coach may have in his possession anything that is used for score keeping or record keeping purposes only.
Rule 3.4.3 e)

Case 5 A junior age person while not wearing a helmet, acts as a batboy and runs onto the field to recover a discarded bat.

RULING: Junior age persons acting as batboys must always wear a helmet when in the dugout and on the field for safety reasons. Advise the batboy and the team manager that a helmet must be worn at all times.

3.5 TEAM PERSONNEL

3.5.1 IN GENERAL

Case 1 The umpire calls a ball on B1, following which the coach calls to F2, "Must have been wide because the height looked good from here." F2 responds that there was nothing wrong with the pitch.

RULING: The actions of the coach and F2 are, in effect, a form of disputing the call. The Umpire should warn the team that this action is not permitted and that any further offence of this nature will warrant ejection.

Rule 3.5.1 a); Effects 3.5.1.a)

Case 2 The umpire rules a strike on B2, who, in a show of disagreement, leans across and draws a line outside the home plate, indicating where he thought the pitch was.

RULING: This action should not be tolerated, as it is a form of disputing the call. The team should be warned that a repeat of this, or any other action indicating a dispute with the call, would result in ejection of the offender.

Rule 3.5.1 a); Effects 3.5.1.a)

Case 3 B1 hits a pitched ball to F6, who fields and throws to F3. The throw is wide, causing F3 to lose contact with the base, as B1 reaches the base. The base umpire, not noticing the loss of contact, calls B1 'out'. The offensive team coach requests that the base umpire asks for help, stating, "Could you please ask for help, as I thought F3 pulled his foot". Is this a form of disputing a call?

RULING: No.

Note: It is acceptable to request an umpire to check with his partners in a situation of this nature. However, it is not acceptable to dispute an umpire's judgement call in a straight forward 'out' or 'safe' situation.

Rule 3.5.1 a)

Case 4 The game is being played on a field that has a very small dugout and no practice area where the bench players may warm-up prior to entering the game as substitutes. The coach wants to bring in a substitute pitcher, so requests permission from the umpire for his players to leave the dugout in order to warm-up in the spectator area. Should the umpire allow the players to leave the dugout for this reason?

RULING: While the rules indicate that players should remain on the bench at all times, the Umpire should use common sense in a case like this and consider the request justified.

Rule 3.5.1 b)

Case 5 Prior to the commencement of the game, while F1 is taking his warm-up pitches, several of the offensive team members stand near both batter's boxes and take practice swings at the warm-up pitches. Is this permitted?

RULING: No. The Umpire should request they return to their dugout, where they should remain until they become an on-deck batter. The only offensive person who should be allowed off the bench is the on-deck batter, who must remain in the on-deck circle until the pitcher has completed his warm-up pitches.

Rule 3.5.1 b); 5.3 a)

- Case 6 At the change of innings, several players stand near the batter's box watching F1 warm-up. The umpire requests they return to the bench and warns the team that players must remain on the bench until they enter the on-deck circle. Two innings later, one of the team members stands and watches the warm-ups again.
- RULING: As the team has already been warned against this action, the offender should be ejected from the game.
Rule 3.5.1 b); Effects 3.5.1 b)
- Case 7 The umpire strikes out B1 on a called third strike. The coach in the 3rd base coach's box hotly disputes the call, both verbally and demonstrably. The coach has previously been warned for a similar offence
Rule 3.5.1 c) & Effect
- 3.6 UMPIRES**
- 3.6.1 POWER AND DUTIES**
- Case 1 Heavy rains have made the playing field unplayable. If a game has not yet started, who may call it off?
- RULING: The Plate Umpire has sole authority to make this decision.
Rule 3.6.1; 3.6.2 a)
- Case 2 Do all Umpires have the power to make decisions on violations committed during the game?
- RULING: Yes.
Rule 3.6.1; Appendix 5 A h)
- Case 3 B1 tries to hold up on their swing and the plate umpire rules 'no swing' and calls a ball. The defence ask the plate umpire to check with his partner.
- RULING: It is desirable that the Plate Umpire asks for help as soon as requested. The Plate Umpire should then 'go' with whatever response comes back from his partner.
Rule 3.6.1; Appendix 5 A j)
- Case 4 Which umpire can call a runner out for leaving a base before the ball leaves the pitcher's hand?
- RULING: Usually the Base Umpire but the plate umpire also has that authority.
Rule 3.6.1; Appendix 5 A l) i.
- Case 5 Who may call "Time" for a suspension of play?
- RULING: Any Umpire working the game may do so.
Rule 3.6.1; Appendix 5 A l) ii; 3.6.7 a)
- Case 6 Who may remove or eject a player, manager, or coach from the game?
- RULING: Any Umpire working the game may do so.
Rule 3.6.1; Appendix 5 A l) iii.
- Case 7 Who calls the Illegal Pitches?
- RULING: Any Umpire working the game may do so.
Rule 3.6.1; Appendix 5 A l) iv.

3.6.2 THE PLATE UMPIRE

Case 1 In the 3rd inning a Base Umpire ejects a player for a violation of the rules. The player refuses to leave the game and continues to remonstrate with the Base Umpire, so the base umpire declares a forfeit.

RULING: The Base Umpire was incorrect in his action, as only the plate umpire may forfeit a game. The Base Umpire should request the Plate Umpire to declare the forfeit in this instance.

Rule 3.6.2 h); 1.1.3; 1.2.2.g)

3.6.5 CHANGE OF UMPIRES

Case 1 During a game neither side likes the Plate Umpire's strike zone, so they request the Umpire-in-Chief to replace him.

RULING: The Umpire-in-Chief should decline the request. Umpires may only be replaced if they become incapacitated by injury or illness.

Rule 3.6.5

3.6.6 UMPIRE'S JUDGMENT

Case 1 In a check swing situation, the Plate Umpire calls a strike (for the half swing). A coach, or player, then requests the Umpire to seek help from the Base Umpire.

RULING: Once a strike is called there can be no appeal and the request should not be considered. The Plate Umpire, if in doubt, should not call it a strike in the first instance. He should request help from the Base Umpire before making a call.

Rule 3.6.6 a)

Case 2 With none out, B3 hits a long fly ball to centre field. The Base Umpire goes out and signals a home run. On seeing this, B3 slows down rounding 2nd. The ball does not go over the fence, so F8 picks it up and throws to the infield for a close play on B3 at 3rd. The umpire calls B3 out.

RULING: Although the Umpire made an incorrect signal, B3 and/or the coaches should have seen the action by the outfielder. No reversal of the decision should be made.

Rule 3.6.6 a)

Case 3 R1 on 3B and R2 on 2B with one out. The scoreboard shows two outs, as B4 hits a long fly ball to F8. F8 makes the catch and throws the ball to F6 who tosses towards the pitcher's circle. R1 and R2 both scores. The defence claims there were two outs as that was what the scoreboard showed. The umpires let the two runs score.

RULING: Each team should be aware of the number of outs and the count. If they are not sure, or if there is an error on the scoreboard, this should be changed, but it does not prevent the two runs from scoring.

Rule 3.6.6 a)

Case 4 Is it possible for an Umpire to change his decision?

RULING: Yes. He may ask his partner for an opinion but the umpire who made the call is the only one who can reverse the decision.

Rule 3.6.6; Appendix 5 A j)

Case 5 R1 on 2nd. B2 hits a ground ball to F6, who fields and attempts to tag R1 advancing to 3rd. The tag is legally made but the 3rd Base Umpire is unsighted and calls “no tag - safe”. The 1st Base Umpire, looking down the line, sees the tag, so calls “Time”. He consults with the 3rd Base Umpire, who subsequently changes his call and declares R1 out.

RULING: The 1st Base Umpire was in error in calling “Time” and discussing the play with the 3rd base umpire. Although the 1st Base Umpire saw the tag and realised the original call was incorrect, he may not seek to reverse the decision, unless asked to do so by the Umpire who made the original call.

Rule 3.6.6. b); Appendix 5 A i)

Case 6 R3 on 2nd with two out. B4 has a 1-1 count, when the Plate Umpire calls the next pitch a strike, pumping B4 out. R3, thinking B4 is out, steps off the base and is tagged by F6.

RULING: The defence, runners and coaches should always be aware of the game situation, the count, and the number of outs.

The plate umpire was in error signalling B4 out on strikes and in making the decision placed R1 in jeopardy. In consultation the umpires may rectify this situation and protect R3 and place R3 back on 2B.

Rule 3.6.6 c)

Case 7 With one out, R1 steals 2nd on the pitch. F2 throws to 2nd, as the Plate Umpire calls ball 4. The throw is in time so the Base Umpire calls R1 out. When he leaves the base to start for the dugout, the defence tag him again. The Base Umpire now realises B2 has ball 4 and that R1 is entitled to 2nd. Had the umpire not called R1 out, he would not have left the base.

RULING: The call is reversed, due to the Base Umpire calling R1 out in error and placing him in jeopardy. R1 remains on 2nd and B2 on 1st.

Rule 3.6.6 c)

Case 8 R2 on 1st, with a 3-2 count on B3. The Plate Umpire calls ball 4 on the next pitch, so R2 advances slowly toward 2nd. F2 asks the Plate Umpire to check with the Base Umpire on a ‘checked swing’ and the base umpire responds with a strike signal. F2 immediately throws the ball to F6, who tags R2 before he reaches 2nd.

RULING: Because the Umpires put R2 in jeopardy on the reversed decision, call “Time”, declare B3 out on 3 strikes and return R2 to 1st.

Rule 3.6.6 c)

3.6.7 SUSPENSION OF PLAY

Case 1 Both F1 and B1 are in their set positions ready for the pitch. A fly annoys B1, so he steps out of the batter’s box, just prior to F1 beginning his wind-up.

RULING: This is a legitimate action on the part of B1. The umpire should immediately suspend play to prevent F1 from delivering the pitch.

Rule 3.6.7 c)

Case 2 R1 on 2nd when the plate umpire, without calling “Time”, leaves his position to check the score with scorekeeper. F1 now leaves the pitcher’s circle to confer with F2, so R1 advances to 3rd.

RULING: Even though “Time” has not been called, the umpire should return R1 to 2nd, as play is always suspended when the plate umpire leaves his position to perform any duty not connected with the calling of plays.

Rule 3.6.7 b)

- Case 3 F1 commences his wind-up, breaks his hands, and is about to start the forward motion of his pitch. At that moment, a ball from an adjacent field lands in the outfield, so the Umpire calls "Time".
- RULING: The Umpire erred in his action, as he should not suspend play after a pitcher has started his wind-up.
Rule 3.6.7 d)
- Case 4 R1 is running between 2nd and 3rd, when a ball from the adjacent diamond enters the playing field, so the umpire calls "Time".
- RULING: The Umpire erred in his action, as he should not suspend play while a play is in progress. Rule 3.6.7 e)
- Case 5 B1 receives ball 4. As he is advancing to 1st, the coach of the defensive team calls "Time" and proceeds to walk to his pitcher.
- RULING: "Time" is the term used by an Umpire to create a suspension of play. In this case, the Umpire will not allow the "Time" call until B1 reaches 1st and stops at the base. He should also prevent the coach from entering the field. A coach or player may make a request for "Time" but only an Umpire can grant "Time". The Umpire should not grant "Time" until the ball is dead, or all play has ceased.
Rule 3.6.7 e); 1.1.10
- Case 6 R1 on 2nd, when B2 hits a line drive that strikes F3. The ball deflects to the fence but not out of play. F3 is obviously injured and unable to retrieve the ball. When should "Time" be called?
- RULING: "Time" should not be called until all plays are completed. It should not take long for one of the other players to retrieve the ball and for all plays to stop. R1 and B2 make what they can until "Time" is called.
Note: If the injury is serious, 'Time' should be called immediately.
Rule 3.6.7 f) & Effect
- Case 7 Bases are loaded, when B4 hits a long fly ball to centre field. F7 collides with F8 in trying to make the catch and both fall to the ground. The defence now request "Time", in an attempt to prevent the last two runners from scoring. All runners cross home plate.
- RULING: The ball does not become dead when players collide during a live ball play. Umpires will not suspend play at the request of players, coaches, or managers until all action in progress by both teams has been completed. Rule 3.6.7g)
If in the umpire's judgment an injury may put a player in danger, "Time" can be called, the ball is dead, and when play is resumed, the umpires can place the runner(s) to the base(s) that they would have made had the injury not occurred.
Rule 3.6.7 f) & Effect
- Case 8 B6 hits the ball between F8 and F9, for what would have been a triple. While advancing to 2B, B6 falls awkwardly to the ground sustaining an injury and cannot move. In the Umpire's judgment B6 is seriously injured and maybe in danger if play continues. The Umpire calls time, (a dead ball) and has a medical person come from the dugout to look at B6. B6 cannot continue, substitute S1 is reported and continues to run for B6. The Umpire awards 3B and S1 goes directly to third. After play ball is called by the Plate Umpire F4 appeals for S1 missing 2B.
- RULING Calling time is legal if in the Umpire's judgment B6 is seriously injured and maybe in danger if play continues. A substitute can be awarded the base it was felt B6 would have made, had they not been injured. Awarded bases must be touched in legal order. S1 is called out on the appeal.
Rule 3.6.7 f) & Effect; 3.2.8 g); 5.9 j) & Effect

Rule 4 PITCHING

4.1 DEFINITIONS

4.1.2 CROW HOP

Case 1 F1 assumes the set position on the pitcher's plate. He holds the position for three seconds then pushes his pivot foot forward and loses contact with the plate. After the pivot foot stops moving forward, he begins his motion to the batter by lifting the non-pivot (stepping) foot, breaking his hands as he begins a windmill action and drags forward with the pivot foot. He finally lands his non-pivot (stepping) foot simultaneously with the release of the ball.

RULING: This is a crow hop and an Illegal Pitch should be called. By pushing the pivot forward from, and losing contact with, the pitcher's plate prior to lifting the non-pivot (stepping) foot, he has created a second starting point, which is an illegal action.
Rule 4.1.2 b); 4.3.3.1 h)

4.1.4 LEAPING

Case 1 F1, in the pitching motion, launches himself off the pitcher's plate in such a manner that the pivot foot is not level with the ground but instead is airborne. This action takes place prior to the non-pivot (stepping) foot touching the ground after leaving the pitcher's plate, resulting in both feet being in the air as the pitch is delivered. Is this legal?

RULING: Yes. The action of the pitcher having both feet in the air after his initial push from the pitcher's plate is considered to be a "leap", which is a legal action.
Rule 4.1.4

4.1.8 QUICK RETURN PITCH

Case 1 B2 swings at and misses the first pitch. F2 returns the ball to F1 who immediately stands on the pitcher's plate and takes the signal. F1 then delivers the pitch, which passes out of the strike zone, as B1 is setting in after taking the signal from the base coach.

RULING: Although the pitch would have been called a ball, it should be ruled a "No Pitch." The action of F1 pitching while B2 has not yet taken their desired position in the batter's box results in a "quick return pitch". F1 should be warned against pitching until B2 is ready to receive the pitch.
Rule 4.1.8; 4.5 a) ii.

4.2.1 DEFENSIVE CONFERENCES

Case 1 In the top of the 3rd inning the offensive team coach requests a conference with his batter. In the bottom half of the inning the same coach (now defensive) requests "Time" to converse with his pitcher. Will this be allowed, or has he had his charged conference for the inning?

RULING: The coach is allowed 1 offensive conference per inning and 3 defensive conferences, with any defensive player, per seven-inning game. This conference is legal, provided he has not previously used up his 3 defensive conferences.
Rule 4.2.1; 5.2

Case 2 The defence requests, and is granted, "Time" by the umpire. The coach enters the playing field to talk to F6. Is this a charged conference?

RULING: Yes. A charged conference occurs when the defensive team requests "Time" for any reason, and a representative from the dugout enters the playing field and confers with any member of the defensive team.
Rule 4.1.1 a); 4.2.1

- Case 3 A coach of the fielding team enters the diamond from the dugout to talk to his pitcher. This is his second trip onto the diamond this inning to visit the same pitcher. Is it legal to have two conferences in the one inning?
- RULING: Yes. It is a charged conference every time the coach, from the bench, enters the diamond and talks to any player. He is entitled to 3 defensive charged conferences per seven-inning game and, provided he has not exceeded this limit, there is no penalty. Rule 4.2.1
- Case 4 A coach from the dugout requests, and is granted, "Time" and crosses the foul line to confer with F1. In the same half inning the coach again crosses the foul line, brings all defensive players except for F1, to 2nd base and has a conference. Is this considered a second conference and must F1 be removed from the pitching position?
- RULING: This is a second defensive conference in the same inning. The coach is entitled to 3 defensive conferences per seven-inning game; F1 may remain in the pitching position, as there is no penalty, provided the coach has not had 2 previous charged conferences. Rule 4.2.1
- Case 5 The starting pitcher cuts their hand on a play. After a reasonable amount of time has elapsed, the umpire informs the manager that the pitcher must leave the game until the bleeding stops. The "replacement Pitcher" does not pitch very well and the defensive coach is granted time to speak with the pitcher. (a) Is the coach charged with a conference. (b) If this is the fourth charged conference in the game, who is removed from the pitching position?
- RULING: Any statistics accrued by the "Replacement Player" while they are in the game, are credited to that player, even if they are a listed substitute who does not eventually enter the game as a substitution for another player therefore (a) this is a charged conference and (b) the replacement pitcher would be the person removed from the pitching position. The starter could return to the game but would have to follow the number of conferences used in the game when they return. Rule 3.1.19; Appendix 6 A a); 4.2.1 a) & Effect
- Case 6 The defensive team uses the last of its 3 conferences when the coach replaces F9 with S1 and is so advised by the umpire. In the next inning the defence request a further conference, believing they are entitled to a new set of 3 conferences whenever a new player enters the game.
- RULING: Conferences are accumulative and do not start over when a new player enters the game. After using their 3-conference entitlement, the defence would not be entitled to any further conferences unless the game entered extra innings. If a fourth conference were to be charged before the completion of 7 innings, the pitcher at the time of the additional conference would be declared an Illegal Pitcher who could not pitch for the remainder of the game. Rule 4.2.1 a); 4.8
- Case 7 A tied game moves into the 8th inning. The defensive team coach enters the diamond and confers with his players. Later in the same inning, he attempts to have a further conference, but the umpire reminds him that he has already used his conference for this inning. The coach insists that he is entitled to the additional conference, as he did not use the 3 conferences that he was entitled to for the first seven innings. Is the coach correct?
- RULING: No. Even though the 3 conferences were not used in the first 7 innings they are lost. When a game goes into extra innings, the defence is limited to one conference per extra inning. Rule 4.2.1 b) & c)

Case 8 F1, an original starting player, is substituted from the game in the 3rd inning as a result of excess defensive conferences. S1, his replacement, is then replaced by S2 in the 4th inning. F1 re-enters the game in the 5th inning, replacing S2 and moves to 2nd, with F4 moving to the pitching position.

RULING: The multiple substitutions are legal. F1 can re-enter as he was the starting pitcher but, by being declared an Illegal Pitcher resulting from the excessive conferences, he cannot return as the pitcher. He may play anywhere else on defence. If he returned as the pitcher and threw one pitch, he would be ejected from the game.
Rule 4.2.1 Effect; 3.2.8 a); 3.2.3 e); 4.8

Case 9 The coach of the defensive team has a conference with F1. After speaking with F1, the coach leaves the pitcher's circle on his way to the dugout. Before crossing the foul line, the coach returns to the circle and says something more to F1.

RULING: The coach's trip to speak with F1 is one charged conference. The return to the circle is part of the original conference. The conference does not end until the team representative crosses the foul line on the way back to the dugout.
Rule 4.2.1 d)

Case 10 During the course of an inning F6 decides he needs to talk to the coach, so leaves his position, without requesting "Time", and proceeds to the front of the dugout to confer with the coach.

RULING: This is a defensive conference. The action of F6 crossing the foul line to speak with the representative from the dugout is treated the same as if the representative had crossed the foul line.
Rule 4.2.1(e)

4.2.2 WHAT IS NOT A CHARGED DEFENSIVE CONFERENCE

Case 1 A conference is usually charged to the defensive team when a team representative enters the playing field to communicate with any defensive player. Should the umpire charge a conference if the representative, after entering the playing field, subsequently notifies the umpire of a pitching change?

RULING: No. A conference should not be charged to the defence if the representative from the dugout notifies the umpire of a pitching change, either before or after entering the playing field.
Rule 4.2.2 a)

Case 2 F1 is having trouble with his control, so the coach is granted "Time" to notify a pitching change to the Umpire. After making the change he proceeds to the pitcher's plate and speaks with F1. Should the coach be charged with a conference?

RULING: A conference should not be charged, even though the coach entered the diamond and conferred with F1. When notifying a pitching change a representative from the dugout may legally enter the diamond to speak to any defensive player, either before or after the notification, without a conference being charged.
Rule 4.2.2 a)

- Case 3 The coach requests and is granted “Time”; he then enters the playing field and has a discussion with his captain, who is playing at first base. Following this discussion, he approaches F1 and tells him he is being substituted from the game, after which he notifies the umpire of the pitching change. As he leaves the playing field the umpire charges the coach with a defensive conference, indicating that the coach should have notified the change before speaking with the captain. Is the umpire correct in charging the conference?
- RULING: No. By notifying a pitching change removes the requirement to charge a defensive conference, regardless of when the notification is made. However, if the coach simply spoke with his captain without making a change, then a conference should be charged.
Rule 4.2.2 a)
- Case 4 B1 for team ‘A’ gets on base so the coach requests, and is granted, “Time” to enable him to speak to his runner. On seeing this, the coach of team ‘B’ hurries onto the diamond to speak with F1. The umpire informs the coach of team ‘A’ that he is being charged with an offensive conference as he returns to the coach’s box and he also informs the coach of team ‘B’ that he is being charged with a defensive conference as he returns to the dugout. Should this be a charged defensive conference?
- RULING: No. A conference should not be charged to the defensive team if they confer during a charged offensive conference, provided they are ready to play when the offensive conference is over.
Rule 4.2.2 c)
- Case 5 A playing coach requests, and is granted, “Time” to talk to F6. The umpire informs the coach that this is a charged conference.
- RULING: This is not a charged conference. A charged conference can only occur when a team representative not on the field, enters the playing field and confers with any defensive player.
Rule 4.2.2 e); 4.1.1 a)
- Case 6 A playing coach has a “Time Out” and confers with his infield. One batter later he requests “Time” again to talk to F1. This is granted. Two batters later he again has a meeting with his pitcher. The umpire decides that the coach is spending too much time with these meetings, so warns the coach that if he continues to have excessive meetings he may be ejected. The coach complains that, as he is a playing coach, he cannot be charged with a conference and that he can confer with his players as often as he wishes.
- RULING: Although the coach is correct in that he should not be charged a conference, as he is a playing coach, the Umpire is quite within his rights to control the number of meetings held between a playing coach and a pitcher.
Rule 4.2.2 e)
- Case 7 The Umpire signals “Time” and leaves his position to confer with the scorekeeper/statistical. While he is conferring, the coach of the defensive team enters the diamond and speaks to his infielders. The umpire returns to his position, and noting the coach on the diamond, charges him with a conference as he is returning to the dugout.
- RULING: The Umpire erred in charging a conference. Conferences should only be charged when either the offensive or defensive team requests “Time” to confer. In this case it was the umpire who called “Time”, so neither team should be charged with a conference during an Umpire ‘Time Out’, unless they are not ready to resume when the Umpire is ready to recommence the game.
Rule 4.2.2 f)

4.3 LEGAL PITCH REQUIREMENTS

4.3.1 PRELIMINARY ACTION BEFORE DELIVERING A PITCH

Case 1 F9 is standing in foul territory when the pitch is released to B1. He was there prior to the start of the pitch.

RULING: An Illegal Pitch is declared.

Note: The umpire should make every effort to prevent this from happening.

Rule 4.3.1 a); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7

Case 2 Can F1 assume the pitching position on or near the plate without the ball?

RULING: No. If he does, an Illegal Pitch should be called.

Rule 4.3.2 b); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7

Case 3 F1 takes his position, with one foot firmly on the ground touching the middle of the pitcher's plate and the other foot completely on the ground, just touching the side of the pitcher's plate.

RULING: This is an illegal action, which results in an Illegal Pitch being called, even though a pitch may not have been delivered. Being completely off the side as stated is an "illegal pitch" and should be called even if the pitch has not been thrown.

Rule 4.3.1 c); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7

Note: The pitcher may have part of their foot off the side of the pitchers' plate and still be within the width of pitchers plate

Case 4 F1 steps onto the pitcher's plate with the toe of pivot foot in contact with the back of the pitcher's plate and the non-pivot (stepping) foot behind the plate and pauses for 2 seconds with the ball in both hands, as F1 moves, the toe of the pivot foot lifts without moving the heel, he then moves forward in the delivery while keeping the foot in contact with the plate, before dragging away toward the batter completing the delivery.

RULING: This is a legal delivery

Rule 4.3.1 c)

Case 5 F1 takes a signal from F2 with his pivot foot on the ground and in contact with the pitcher's plate. The non-pivot (stepping) foot is on the ground behind, but not in contact with, the pitcher's plate.

RULING: This is legal. F1 pivot foot must be in contact with the pitcher's plate. Both feet must be within the 61.0cm (24 in) length of the pitcher's plate. There is no requirement for the stepping foot to be in contact with the pitcher's plate.

Rule 4.3.1 c); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7

Case 6 F1, in taking the signal from F2, has the non-pivot (stepping) foot toeing the back of the pitcher's plate. After receiving the signal from F2, F1 assumes the pitching position by bringing his hands together in front of the body. As he does so, the non-pivot (stepping) foot steps back some 7 cm (3 in) behind the pitcher's plate. He then proceeds to pitch.

RULING: This is a legal action. F1 can move the non-pivot foot off the back of the plate prior to the 2 second stop or as they bring their hands together. This position must then be held for not less than 2 seconds and not more than 5 seconds before releasing the ball. Any backward movement of the non-pivot foot during or after the pause is an illegal pitch.

Rule 4.3.1 c) & f); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7

- Case 7 F1 has taken the signal and is standing on the pitcher's plate with both feet in contact with the plate. While addressing the batter, and before starting the wind-up, he slips his pivot foot some 7cm (3 in) behind the pitcher's plate causing the foot to lose contact with the plate. He then commences the wind-up, separates his hands, and delivers the pitch. Is this a legal action?
- RULING: No. Prior to commencing the pitch the pivot foot must remain motionless while in contact with the pitcher's plate.
Rule 4.3.1 c); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7; 4.3.2 b)
- Case 8 F1 takes a signal from F2, while standing within the pitcher's circle but not on the pitcher's plate. He then assumes a legal pitching position for two seconds and pitches the ball.
- RULING: This is an Illegal Pitch. F1 must take the signal while legally in contact with the pitcher's plate.
Rule 4.3.1 e); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7
Note: F1 may take the signal off the pitcher's plate, however, must take or appear to take the signal while the pivot foot is in contact with the plate, with the hands apart.
- Case 9 May F1 take the signal from F2 with his hands together?
- RULING: No. His hands must be apart when he steps onto the pitcher's plate and while taking the signal. An Illegal Pitch should be called if he steps onto the pitcher's plate with his hands together.
Rule 4.3.1 e); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7
- Case 10 The pitcher has assumed the pitching position and places the ball in both hands and stops. The pitcher then moves the ball, while their hands are still together, to their side and stops again.
- RULING: This is legal. A pitcher can stop any number of times prior to the start of the pitch. Holding the ball in both hands to the side of the body is considered in front of the body and is legal.
Rule 4.3.1 f)
- Case 11 F1 steps onto the pitcher's plate with hands separated, to take a signal from F2. F1 then starts the motion, joining the bare hand and the glove together for the pause, but during the motion does not bring them together prior to the wind-up.
- RULING: This action is what is known as "a moving pause". It is an illegal action that results in an Illegal Pitch. It is a requirement that the ball shall be held in both hands in front of the body (or side) for a minimum of two seconds before beginning the pitching motion.
Rule 4.3.1 f); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7
- Case 12 F1, after stepping onto the pitcher's plate with his hands separated, takes the signal, and puts his hands together. He comes to a complete stop for (a) one second, or (b) 8 seconds, and then delivers the pitch.
- RULING: It is an Illegal Pitch in both cases, as F1 must come to a full and complete stop, after putting his hands together, for a minimum of 2 seconds and not more than 5 seconds before commencing the pitching motion.
Rule 4.3.1 f); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7

Case 13 After taking the signal from F2, F1 holds the ball in both hands at the side of his body. He holds this position for 3 seconds and then delivers the pitch. The offensive team suggest to the Umpire that this should be an Illegal Pitch, as F1 did not hold the ball in front of his body. Is the offence correct?

RULING: No. Holding the ball to the side of the body is considered to be in front of the body, so the action is legal.

Rule 4.3.1 f)

Case 14 F1 steps onto the pitcher's plate with both feet in contact with the pitcher's plate, then steps back with the non-pivot (stepping) foot, places the hands together for 2 seconds and completes the pitch.

RULING: This is a legal action, the pitcher's non-pivot (stepping) foot does not have to be in contact with the plate and can step back prior to the pause as long as it does not move backward after the pitcher sets prior to starting the pitch. All movement of the non-pivot (stepping) foot after the pause must be forward toward the batter. The pause must be held for a minimum of 2 second and not more than 5 seconds.

Rule 4.3.1 f); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7

Case 15 F1 steps onto the pitcher's plate with only the pivot foot in contact with the plate and places the non-pivot (stepping) foot behind the plate, both within the width of the pitcher's plate. F1 then places the hands together for 2 seconds, steps back to get a balanced stance prior to completing the pitch.

RULING: This is an illegal action, the pitcher's non-pivot (stepping) foot cannot move backward after or during the pause. All movement of the non-pivot (stepping) foot after the pause must be forward toward the batter. The pause must be held for a minimum of 2 second and not more than 5 seconds. The Umpire should call illegal pitch immediately.

Rule 4.3.1 f); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7

Case 16 F1 assumes the legal pitching position with the ball held in both hands. The hands come together at waist level, where F1 moves the ball held in both hands to their side, stops for 2 seconds, then A) moves the ball back to in front of the body, pauses for two seconds, then commences the windup by breaking their hands and delivering the pitch, or B) steps back with one foot, keeps one foot in contact with the plate, moves the ball back to in front of the body, stops (pauses) for two seconds, then commences the windup by breaking their hands and delivering the pitch.

RULING: In A) This is a legal act. The pitch does not start until one hand is taken off the ball, or the pitcher makes any motion that is part of the pitcher's wind up. Note: The first stop (pause) is considered the start of the "two second Stop (pause)". Additionally, if the pitcher brings the hands together to the front of the body, this is considered as a continuation of the pause and is permitted prior to the start of the wind up or separation of the hands.

In B) this is an illegal act. The pitcher cannot step back after the two second pause.

Rule 4.3.1 f); 4.3.2 a); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7

4.3.2 START OF PITCH

Case 1 F1, while in possession of the ball and on the pitcher's plate, takes the signal and then puts his hands together and comes to a full and complete stop. He then goes through a legal wind-up and releases the ball toward B1. What part of F1's action is considered the pitch?

RULING: The pitch is the act performed by F1 in delivering the ball to B1. The ball is considered a pitch from the time one hand is taken off the ball, or the pitcher starts his wind-up motion, up until the time B1 hits the ball, F2 catches the ball, or the ball becomes blocked or goes out of play. Rule 4.3.2 a); 4.3.3.1

- Case 2 After taking a legal pitching position with both hands together, F1 takes one hand off the ball and then steps backward off the pitcher's plate.
- RULING: This is an "Illegal Pitch." When F1 takes one hand off the ball the pitch has started, the only thing F1 can then do is deliver the pitch to the batter. If F1 wants to step backward off the pitcher's plate, they must do so while both hands are together and before the pitch has started.
Rule 4.3.2 a); 4.3.7; Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7
Note: Once the pitcher steps back with the hands together and removes both feet from the pitcher's plate it will be obvious of the pitcher's intension and the umpire should call time.
- Case 3 After taking a legal pitching position with both hands together and pausing, F1 a) takes one hand off the ball and then places their hands back together taking their hands to the side b) takes a backward swing and places the hands back together, as they commence the windup and releases the ball to the batter.
- RULING: In a) and b) this is an "Illegal Pitch." When F1 takes one hand off the ball the pitch has started, the only thing they can then do is deliver the pitch to the batter.
Rule 4.3.2 a); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7
- Case 4 F1 is in the pitching position. He separates the hands, takes a backward swing of the arm, and then joins the hands together in front of the body before resuming his pitching motion.
- RULING: This is an Illegal Pitch. Once the hands have been separated after being in the pitching position, F1 may not then return the ball to both hands before delivering the pitch.
Rule 4.3.2 a); 4.3.3.1 a); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7
- Case 5 After assuming a legal pitching position with both hands together, pauses then F1 raises his hands above his head and then, with his hands still together, steps backward off the pitcher's plate.
- RULING: This is an Illegal Pitch. When F1 raises his hands above his head, the pitch has started and the only thing he can then do is deliver it to the batter. If he wants to step backward off the pitcher's plate, he must do so while both hands are together and before the pitch has started.
Note: If the pitcher places the hands together, pauses then moves their hands to the side and pauses prior to completing the pitch, the first pause is considered the trigger for stepping back, not the last.
Rule 4.3.2 a); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7
- Case 6 After assuming a legal pitching position on the pitcher's plate, F1 lifts his pivot foot approximately 15.2cm (6 inches) from the plate as he leans back to gain momentum for the delivery, and then returns it to the plate as he pivots and releases the pitch.
- RULING: This is an Illegal Pitch. He may not raise and replace the pivot foot in a rocking motion.
Rule 4.3.2 b); 4.3.3.1 f)
- Case 7 F1 steps onto the pitcher's plate with the pivot foot in contact with the pitcher's plate and the non-pivot (stepping) foot behind the plate and pauses for 2 seconds, they then lift the pivot foot completely off the plate and drives it back onto the plate as they leap from the plate completing the delivery.
- RULING: (FP only). This is an illegal action; the umpire should call illegal pitch immediately with a delayed dead ball being ruled. Lifting the pivot foot off the plate creating a rocking motion is an illegal act. Rule 4.3.2 b); 4.3.3.1 f)

Case 8 F1 steps onto the pitcher's plate with the pivot foot in contact with the pitcher's plate and the non-pivot (stepping) foot behind the plate and pauses for 2 seconds, then lifts, a) the heel of the pivot foot off the plate while keeping the toe down, or b) the complete ball of the pivot foot off the plate with the heel in contact, at no time does the foot move forward off the plate while completing the delivery.

RULING: (FP only). Both a) and b) are legal actions; the Umpire should allow the pitch as long as the pitcher did not lift the complete foot from the plate creating a rocking motion.; the Umpire should allow the pitch as long as the pitcher did not lift the complete foot from the plate creating a rocking motion.

Rule 4.3.2 b); 4.3.3.1 f)

4.3.3 LEGAL DELIVERY

4.3.3.1 FAST PITCH

Case 1 After starting his wind-up, F1 separates his hands but over-balances, so does not deliver the pitch.

RULING: This is an Illegal Pitch. Once the wind-up motion has begun or F1 has separated his hands, the only thing he can do is deliver the pitch to the batter.

Rule 4.3.3.1 a); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7

Case 2 F1 comes to a complete stop on the pitcher's plate with the ball in both hands. Using a windmill action, he takes the ball in his pitching hand back past his hip, makes a complete revolution of the arm, and then releases the ball on the second time past his hip.

RULING: This is a legal pitch. The pitcher's arm can pass the hip twice in his wind-up motion, but he cannot make two full revolutions. Rule 4.3.3.1 b)

Case 3 F1 pauses on the pitcher's plate with the ball in both hands. Using a windmill delivery, F1 takes the ball in the pitching hand back past their hip, makes a complete revolution of the arm, and then releases the ball on the second time past the hip.

RULING: (FP only). This is a legal pitch. The pitcher's arm can pass the hip twice in the wind-up motion, but they cannot make two full revolutions. Rule 4.3.3.1 b)

Case 4 The pitcher comes to the required stop for two seconds. The pitcher then takes the ball in the pitching hand and releases the ball on the first forward movement past the hip, without completing a full revolution of the arm:

RULING: Legal. The pitcher may make 1 full revolution of the arm or may release the ball on the first forward movement of the arm past the hip. This is considered a "slingshot" delivery. Rule 4.3.3.1 b)

Case 5 F1 throws the first two pitches with a legal windmill delivery, and the next pitch is thrown with a "slingshot" delivery. Is this legal?

RULING: (FP only). Yes. A windmill or sling shot delivery can be used on any pitch as long as it is legal by the book ruling. The pitcher may make 1 full revolution of the arm or may release the ball on the first forward movement of the arm past the hip (sling shot). Rule 4.3.3.1 b)

Case 6 F1 slides his pivot foot across the pitcher's plate (without losing contact with it) prior to breaking his hands to start the pitch. He then completes the delivery with a step toward the batter with the non-pivot foot (stepping foot). Is this considered as taking two steps?

RULING: No. F1 may legally slide his foot across the pitcher's plate, provided contact is maintained with the plate. Rule 4.3.3.1 e)

- Case 7 After taking the signal F1 comes to a stop on the pitcher's plate with the ball in both hands. As he begins his windup motion, he steps forward with his pivot foot losing contact with the pitcher's plate. He proceeds to pitch.
- RULING: This is an illegal pitch. The pivot foot must remain in contact with the pitcher's plate at all times before the forward drag leap or hop.
Rule 4.3.3.1 f) & h); Effect 4.3.1 to 4.3.7
- Case 8 After assuming a legal pitching position with both hands together, F1 brings his body to a stop for 3 seconds, releases the non-pivot (stepping) foot from the pitcher's plate as he starts the wind-up and drags the pivot foot away from the plate. In delivering the pitch, the pivot foot pushes from this new position, off the plate, prior to the non-pivot (stepping) foot landing, with the hands separated.
- RULING: This is a legal pitch, provided the pitching motion is fluid without any distinguishable pause in the action.
Rule 4.3.3.1 f)
- Case 9 F1 takes the signal; and then puts the hands together and stops for the required time. F1 begins the wind-up and leaps from the pitcher's plate and, with a continuous motion of the pitching arm, separates the hands, lands, and completes the delivery to the batter. Upon landing and simultaneous with the release of the ball F1 pushes the pivot foot from the landing point and follows through. Is this action considered to be a Crow Hop?
- RULING: No. This is a legal action. The pitcher may leap from the pitcher's plate, land and with a continuous motion deliver the ball to the batter. The pivot foot may follow through with the pitcher's continuous action.
Rule 4.3.3.1 f) & h); Effect 4.3.1 to 4.3.7; 4.1.4
- Case 10 F1 starts the wind-up, separates the hands, and begins the pitch. After beginning the forward motion F1 pauses momentarily and then continues with the release of the ball.
- RULING: This is an Illegal Pitch, as F1 may not make any stop in his wind-up action once the forward motion has commenced.
Rule 4.3.3.1 c) & g); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7
- Case 11 F1 starts on the pitcher's plate and pauses for 3 seconds, while leaping from the pitcher's plate the pitcher a) starts the windmill action and when their arm is at the top of the arc holds it momentarily while airborne, then restarts the action lands with the pivot foot following through completing the windmill and delivers the pitch or, b) while airborne during the delivery separates the hands slightly, however the arms remain out in front without motion, then as they land, with the pivot foot following through, they complete the windmill action and deliver the pitch.
- RULING: (FP only). Illegal pitch. All movement of the pitching arm must be continuous.
Rule 4.3.3.1 g); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7; 4.1.4
- Case 12 After assuming a legal pitching position with both hands together, F1 brings his body to a stop for 3 seconds. He then slides his pivot forward some 15.2cm (6 inches), loses contact with the pitcher's plate, releases the non-pivot (stepping) foot from the pitcher's plate, takes his hand from the ball and completes the pitch.
- RULING: This is a Crow Hop and therefore an Illegal Pitch. F1 has pushed off from a place other than the pitcher's plate.
Rule 4.3.3.1 h); 4.3.2 b); 4.1.2; Effect 4.3.1 to 4.3.7

- Case 13 Bottom of the 7th inning, with R1 on 3rd and a score of Red 6 Blue 6. The next Red Team batter (B6) has already hit 2 home runs so F1, in an attempt to prevent him from hitting the ball, bounces it along the ground.
- RULING: This is an Illegal Pitch. F1 may not deliberately release the ball in any manner designed to prevent B6 hitting the ball. Because R1 is awarded a base on the illegal pitch, Red Team wins the game 7-6.
Rule 4.3.3.1 j); Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7
- Case 14 F2 returns a pitched ball directly to F1. The umpire decides that F1 is taking an unusual amount of time preparing for the next pitch.
- RULING: F1 has 20 seconds to release the next pitch after receiving the ball, or after the umpire indicates "Play Ball". An extra ball should be awarded to the batter for violation of the 20-second delivery rule.
Rule 4.3.3.1 k) & Effect; 5.4.3 a) iii
- Case 15 The umpire calls a ball on B1 and F2 throws the ball back to F1. F1, upset with the call, throws 2 pitches underhand to F6 before getting back on the pitcher's plate for the next pitch. Is there a violation for F1 throwing to another defensive player between pitches?
- RULING: No. The only penalty covering this is that F1 has 20 seconds to release the next pitch after receiving the ball from F2. If he does not release the next pitch within this time frame, an extra ball shall be awarded to the batter.
Rule 4.3.3.1 k) & Effect; 5.4.3 a) iii
- Case 16 Does F1 have a maximum of 20 seconds to release the next pitch after receiving the ball from F2 with (a) no runners on base, or (b) with runners on base, or (c) from another infielder.
- RULING: Yes, in all three situations.
Rule 4.3.3.1 k) & Effect
- 4.3.4 DEFENSIVE POSITIONING**
- Case 1 In an attempt to distract the batter, F4 stands next to F1 and frantically waves his arms as F1 commences his wind-up. What should the umpire do?
- RULING: Umpire should call an illegal pitch; a dead ball is ruled and eject F4 from the game. Note: Preventive umpiring should be used to stop or control this action where possible.
Rule 4.3.4 a) & Effect; Effect 4.3.1 to 4.3.7; 3.5.1 c) ii. & Effect
- Case 2 R3 on 3rd. A squeeze play is in progress as B5 attempts to bunt the pitched ball and is obstructed by F2.
- RULING: Both an Illegal Pitch and Obstruction are declared. R3 is awarded home on the Illegal Pitch and B5 is awarded 1st on the obstruction.
Rule 4.3.4 b) & Effect; Effects 4.3.1 to 4.3.7
- 4.3.5 FOREIGN SUBSTANCE**
- Case 1 F5 is detected placing a foreign substance on the ball.
- RULING: This is an illegal action. The team should be warned that a continuance of placing any foreign substance would result in ejection of the pitcher.
Rule 4.3.5 a) & d) & Effect

- Case 2 The Umpire detects a foreign substance (pine tar) on the ball between innings. What action should he take?
- RULING: The ball should be removed from the game upon detection. Repeated doctoring of the ball, in this manner, should result in a warning to F1 and the team coach. The pitcher should be ejected if the act is repeated after a warning.
Note: Not knowing which team has put the foreign substance on the ball, watch the pitchers closely, and also observe any teammates that come to the pitching circle. If anything is suspicious, ask to see the ball, and if there is a foreign substance on this new ball, warn F1 and the manager. If any defensive player after a warning continues to put foreign substance on the ball, the pitcher should be ejected.
Rule 4.3.5 a) & Effect
- Case 3 F1 is using powdered resin to dry his hands. It comes to the Umpire's attention that F1 is placing the resin bag in his pocket between pitches. What action should the Umpire take, if any?
- RULING: It is a requirement that resin bags should be kept on the ground, behind the pitcher's plate and within the pitcher's circle, when not in use. The Umpire should inform F1 of this requirement and ensure that F1 complies with his instruction.
Rule 4.3.5 b) & Effect
- Case 4 F1 has a bag of rock resin in the pitcher's circle. Is this allowed?
- RULING: No. The Umpire shall remove the rock resin from the game. Under the control of the Umpire only powdered resin, or approved manufactured cloths embedded with resin only, may be used by F1.
Rule 4.3.5 b) & Effect
- Case 5 F1 places resin directly on the ball, then releases the pitch before the umpire can stop play.
- RULING: If a Defensive team member continues to place a foreign substance on the ball or continues to violate any provision of 4.3.5 An Illegal Pitch should be called. F1 may only apply the resin to his hands, not directly to the ball.
Rule 4.3.5 d) & Effect; 4.3.1 to 4.3.7 Effect
- Case 6 F1 is using a cloth embedded with resin and it is in his back pocket. Between pitches he is placing his fingers on the cloth and then placing his fingers on the ball prior to pitching. What action should the Umpire take, if any?
- RULING: Nothing. A resin impregnated approved cloth should be kept in the pocket or on F1's belt when not in use. The umpire should allow F1 to continue.
Rule 4.3.5 c)
- Case 7 Is it legal for F1 to wear a batting glove on his gloved hand?
- RULING: Yes. Pitchers cannot have any wristband, glove, or similar item on the pitching arm, but it is permissible to wear these items on the gloved hand.
Rule 4.3.5 e)
- Case 8 F1 is wearing a blue wristband or sweatband on each wrist while pitching. Is this allowed?
- RULING: No. The wearing of a wristband or sweatband on the wrist or forearm of the pitching arm, regardless of colour, is illegal. However, if the pitcher is required to wear a sweatband or similar covering over an injury on the pitching arm he may do so, provided the arm is completely covered with an undershirt that does not extend below the wrist.
Rule 4.3.5 e)

4.3.6 THE CATCHER

Case 1 F2 sets up to receive an outside pitch. Before F1 releases the ball, F2 (a) steps out of the catcher's box, or (b) has one foot on the line and the other foot inside the catcher's box. F1 then releases the pitch.

RULING: In (a) it is an Illegal Pitch, as F2 must be within the outside lines of the catcher's box when the pitch is released.

In (b) there is no penalty as on the line is considered being within the catcher's box.
Rule 4.3.6 a); 2.1.4

Case 2 B1 has a count of one strike, with no runners on base. F1 pitches a strike but the ball gets away from F2. F5 retrieves the ball and throws to F6, who then relays it to F1. The offensive team ask for an extra ball on the batter, as the ball was not returned directly to F1.

RULING: There is no violation, so the count is now 2 strikes. The rule only applies to F2 having to return the ball directly to F1.

Rule 4.3.6 b)

Case 3 B1 has a 1-1 count with no runners on base. On the next pitch he hits a foul ball, which F2 retrieves and throws to F5.

RULING: This is an illegal action, as F2 must return the ball directly to F1 after retrieving a foul ball with no runners on base. An extra ball is awarded to B1 taking the count to 2-2.

Rule 4.3.6 b) & Effect

Case 4 There is a runner at 3rd. F2 returns a pitched ball to F5.

RULING: The actions of F2 are legal. He may throw the ball to any of the defensive players when there are runners on base.

Rule 4.3.6 b) iii.

Case 5 With no runners on base, B1 bunts the 1st pitch close to the first base foul line. F2 fields the spinning ball and throws it to F3, just as the umpire calls "Foul Ball". B1 returns to bat and asks the umpire for an extra 'ball' to be added to the count, because F2 did not return the ball directly to F1.

RULING: The umpire should decline the request.

Rule 4.3.6 b) iv.

Case 6 B1 has a 2-2 count. On the next pitch, B1 starts to swing and then checks the swing by pulling the bat back. F2 drops the pitched ball and it lands at his feet. After recovering the ball, he throws it toward F3, then turns to the plate umpire and makes an appeal on the 'check swing'. The request from the plate umpire to the base umpire comes back as 'no swing'. Is B1 awarded an additional ball?

RULING: B1 is not awarded an additional ball. F2 should not be penalised for trying to get an out on a check swing third strike. It does not matter that the plate umpire initially called the pitch a "Ball".

Rule 4.3.6 b) v.

4.3.7 THROWING TO A BASE

Case 1 F1 is on the pitcher's plate ready to begin the delivery, when F3 calls for the ball to appeal a runner missing the base. F1 turns and throws to F3 (a) while in contact with the plate, or (b) after stepping sideways from the plate, or (c) after stepping backwards off the plate before separating the hands.

RULING: In both (a) & (b) it is an Illegal Pitch, and the appeal is cancelled. In (c) the action is legal.

Rule 4.3.7; 1.2.6 a) i.

4.3 EFFECTS

Case 1 F1 commits an illegal pitch with R1 on 3rd, R2 on 1st and B3 at bat with a 2-1 count. B3 does not hit the ball.

RULING: B3 is awarded an extra ball and R1 advances home, with R2 advancing to 2nd.

Rule 4.3.1 to 4.3.7 Effects a)

Case 2 R1, on 1st, is stealing on the first pitch to B2. The pitch is declared Illegal and gets away from F2. R1 reaches 3rd before F2 can recover the ball. The defensive team now requests the umpire to return R1 to 2nd, stating that runners are only entitled to one base on an Illegal Pitch.

RULING: Whilst it is true that runners are normally advanced one base on an Illegal Pitch, this only applies if no play had been made on the pitch. As R1 was in the act of stealing when the Illegal Pitch was called, he may retain any bases he is able to make on the pitch.

Rule 4.3.1 to 4.3.7 Effect (a)

Case 3 R1, on 1st, is stealing on the first pitch to B2. The pitch is declared Illegal and gets away from F2. R1 reaches 2nd and upon seeing that F2 has not yet recovered the ball, attempts to go to 3rd. F2 recovers the ball and throws to F5 who tags out R1 sliding into the base. The offensive team now requests the umpire to enforce the Illegal Pitch penalty and return R1 to 2nd.

RULING: The request is denied and R1 remains out. R1 was in the act of stealing when the Illegal Pitch was called so he may attempt to advance further than the one base he would normally be entitled to on the Illegal Pitch and if he attained the extra base, he would be entitled to retain it. However, by being tagged out after attaining the base he would normally be entitled to, he remains out.

Rule 4.3.1 to 4.3.7 Effect (a)

Case 4 R1 on 3rd, R2 on 1st and B3 at bat with a 2-1 count. An Illegal Pitch is called but B3 hits a slow roller to F5. F5 fakes, holding R1 at 3rd, then throws to F3 but the throw is too late to retire B3. R2 advances to 2nd. What is the result of this play?

RULING: B3 and R2 both advanced one base. However, R1 did not, so the Illegal Pitch should be enforced. The coach should be given the option of taking the result of the play or taking the award for the Illegal Pitch. If he takes the Illegal Pitch award R1 advances home, R2 stays at 2nd and B3 returns to the batter's box with a count of ball 3 and strike 1.

Rule 4.3.1 to 4.3.7 Effect b); 5.1.34

- Case 5 F1 delivers an Illegal Pitch. B1 slaps it to the outfield for a base hit but is thrown out trying to stretch it into a double. Is the Illegal Pitch now enforced?
- RULING: No. Because B1 reached 1st safely, the Illegal Pitch is nullified. B1 advanced beyond 1st at his own risk.
Rule 4.3.1 to 4.3.7 Effect b)
- Case 6 No runners on and B3 at the plate with no count. F1 commits an Illegal Pitch that strikes B3 on the leg.
- RULING: Any Illegal Pitch that hits a batter becomes dead immediately, with the batter awarded 1st, regardless of whether any attempt was made to avoid the pitch. Other runners are advanced one base and no option is given on the pitch.
Rule 4.3.1 to 4.3.7 Effect e)
- Case 7 The pitcher delivers an illegal pitch that hits the batter swinging at the pitch.
- RULING: When an illegal pitch hits the batter, the ball is dead, the batter is awarded first base and all runners are advanced one base. No option is given.
Rule 4.3.1 to 4.3.7 Effect e)
- Case 8 R1 is on 2B. B2 hits an illegal pitch and reaches 1B safely. R1 is (a) thrown out at 3B, (b) is thrown out at home plate, or (c) is safe at 3B.
- RULING: In (a) the offensive team has the option of taking the award of the illegal pitch as the runner R1 did not make one base.
In (b) or (c) the "illegal pitch" is ignored and play stands as R1 and B2 each made one base on the batted ball, even though R1 was thrown out at home.
Rule 4.3.1 to 4.3.7 b)

4.4 WARM-UP PITCHES

- Case 1 S1 replaces F1. How many pitches are permitted for his warm-up?
- RULING: Five pitches or 1 minute. However, the umpire is authorised to allow more pitches if the umpire delays the start or resumption of play due to substitution, conference, injuries, or another reason cited by the Umpire. Rule 4.4 a)
- Case 2 B1, the pitcher, is the third out of the 2nd inning. Before taking the field, he sits in the dugout for some time fiddling with his shoes and glove. When he eventually arrives at the pitcher's plate, the umpire calls "Play Ball". F1 says that he has one minute to warm-up and is entitled to his three warm-up pitches.
- RULING: The one-minute time limit begins immediately following the third out in the previous half inning. Therefore, F1 would be entitled to 1 warm-up pitch only.
Rule 4.4 a)
- Case 3 F2 for Team 'A' was at bat and became the 3rd out of the inning. Team 'A' now come out to play defence but F1 decides to wait for F2 to put his gear on before attempting to take his warm-up pitches. By the time F2 is ready 1 minute has elapsed so the umpire only allows 1 warm-up pitch rather than the usual 3. Was the umpire correct in taking this action?
- RULING: Yes. Although 3 warm-up pitches are normally permitted, if F1 does not take them with another team member while F2 is getting ready and time has expired, F1 is limited to 1 warm-up pitch only.
Rule 4.4 a)

Case 4 Smith, the starting pitcher, pitches to one batter and is then switched with Brown at right field. After two more batters in the same inning, Brown and Smith switch back to their original positions. Is Smith entitled to 5 warm-up pitches?

RULING: No. A pitcher returning to pitch in the same half inning will not be entitled to warm-up pitches.

Rule 4.4 c)

4.5 NO PITCH

Case 1 B3, a left-hander, has a count of ball 3. He is obviously taking a signal from the 3rd base coach, as he has his back foot in the batter's box and his front foot out of the box. F1 is not on the pitcher's plate but F2 is in position in the catcher's box. F1 steps on the plate and releases the pitch while B3's foot is still out of the box.

RULING: No Pitch should be declared. Do not let F1 pitch until B3 is ready.

Rule 4.5 a) ii

Case 2 F1 is in pitching position on the pitcher's plate with their hands together, ready to pitch. During the back swing and prior to the pitch, B1's bat contacts F2's glove. F1 then breaks their hands apart, delivers the pitch and B1 flies out.

RULING: No pitch should be declared.

Note: When the batter and catcher made contact (bat and glove) while taking practice swings or during the back swing, the plate umpire should call "time" and allow both players to reset prior to the pitch. B1 returns to the batter's box, with no count.

Rule 4.5 a) ii

Case 3 R2 on 2nd and B3 at bat with a 2-2 count. F1 delivers the next pitch as R2 is called out for leaving the base too early. The pitch is called a strike. Is this a double play?

RULING: No. The ball is dead immediately when R2 is called out, so the pitch becomes a 'No Pitch'. B3 resumes batting with a 2-2 count.

Rule 4.5 b)

Case 4 The pitcher has started the pitching motion when an umpire spots a stray ball on the playing field. The umpire calls "Time." However, the batter hits the pitched ball (a) for a single, (b) a home run, or (c) for an out.

RULING: When time is called, the umpires should not allow the play to continue even though the pitcher was in the pitching motion.

Rule 4.5; 3.6.7 a)

Case 5 R2 on 2nd with two out. He gets a good jump on the first pitch to B3 who hits a foul ball over the roof of the stand. F1 receives a new ball from the umpire, sets, and pitches to B3 as R2 is still returning to 2nd. B3 hits a single, scoring R2.

RULING: The ball is dead after the foul ball and cannot be made live again until R2 has retouched his base. Rule the pitch a 'No Pitch' and return R2 to 2nd. B3 bats again with a count of 1 strike.

Rule 4.5 c)

Case 6 With R3 on 3rd, the base coach waves his arms about wildly, causing F1 to stop his pitching motion without delivering the ball. Has F1 committed an Illegal Pitch by not delivering the pitch?

RULING: No. The Umpire should declare 'No Pitch' and warn the coach that a repeat of this action will result in his ejection.

Rule 4.5 d)

4.6 DROPPED BALL

Case 1 F1 is in his wind-up. The ball accidentally comes loose from his grip and goes (a) forward toward the plate, or (b) backward toward 2nd.

RULING: In both cases, a ball is called on the batter and the ball is alive and in play. Runners may advance at their own risk. This is not an Illegal Pitch.
Rule 4.6

Case 2 R1 on 2nd. F1 goes into his wind-up and the ball slips from his hand during the back swing. R1 advances to 3rd before F4 can recover the ball.

RULING: The advance is legal, as the ball remains live and in play when the ball slips from the pitcher's hand.
Rule 4.6

4.8 ILLEGAL PITCHER

Case 1 During the 4th inning Smith, the pitcher, is removed from the game for exceeding the charged conferences limit. In the 6th inning Smith re-enters the game in the pitching position. Should Smith be permitted to continue as the pitcher?

RULING: No. At the time of being removed from the pitching position by the umpire, Smith became an Illegal Pitcher who may not pitch for the remainder of the game.
Rule 4.8; 4.1.3

Case 2 In the 3rd inning, Bloggs is declared an Illegal Pitcher as a result of the team exceeding the charged defensive conference limit. Adams, who is playing right field, replaces him and Bloggs moves to right field. In the 6th inning, Adams is replaced by legal substitute Edwards, who moves to right field. Bloggs returns to pitch and B1 flies out to F4. The opposing coach now informs the umpire that Bloggs is an Illegal Pitcher.

RULING: Bloggs should be ejected from the game. The offensive team coach is given the option of (a) taking the result of the play, or (b) have B1 bat again assuming the count he had prior to hitting the ball.
Rule 4.8 Effect; 5.1.34 e)

Case 3 Smith, an Illegal Pitcher, returns to the pitcher's plate in a later innings. Before a pitch is thrown, the offensive team coach appeals to the umpire that Smith is an Illegal Pitcher so should be ejected.

RULING: As the appeal was made before a pitch had been thrown there is no violation. A legal pitcher should simply replace Smith and the game continued.
Rule 4.8 Effect; 5.1.34 e)

RULE 5 BATTING AND BASE RUNNING

5.1 DEFINITIONS

5.1.1 BASE ON BALLS OR WALK

Case 1 R1 on 1st as B2 receives Ball 4. The pitch gets away from F2, so B2 advances to 1st and R1 runs all the way to 3rd. The defensive team insists that R1 returns to 2nd, stating runners can only run 1 base on Ball 4.

RULING: The defence is incorrect so the plea should be ignored, with R2 remaining at 3rd.
Rule 5.1.1; 5.10.3 b) v.

Case 2 A pitched ball to B1 goes out of play under the backstop. Because it is ball 4, B1 is awarded 1st. However, as the ball went out of play, the offensive team coach wants an extra base.

RULING: B1 is awarded 1st only on the 4th ball. No extra base is given. Had it been only ball 3, B1 would not have gone anywhere.

Rule 5.1.1; 5.10.5 Effect a) i. 1 & a) ii. 2.

5.1.2 BASE PATH

Case 1 On a hit to the outfield, B2 takes an unusually wide turn while rounding 1st on his way to 2nd. F7 retrieves the ground ball and throws it to F4, who makes a futile attempt at tagging B2, who is sliding headfirst into the base from the outfield side of the base. The umpire rules B2 safe. The defence argues that B2 should be out for being outside the imaginary 0.91m (three foot) base path.

RULING: The base umpire's judgement and ruling are correct. The base path is established by the runner and is an imaginary direct line from the runner to the base to which he is advancing at the time a defensive player is attempting to make a tag. Rule 5.1.2.

5.1.7 BLOCKED BALL

Case 1 Is a blocked ball called when a thrown ball (a) strikes a spectator, or (b) accidentally touches a coach who is standing in the coach's box?

RULING: (a) Yes. (b) No.

Rule 5.1.7 b) & e); 5.10.4 o).

Case 2 B2 hits a ground ball to F8 with R1 on 2nd. R1 rounds 3rd and advances toward home, as F8 fields and throws to F2. The throw is wild and contacts a warm-up bat that the On-deck batter has dropped on the ground. The ball ricochets away, preventing F3, who is backing up, from making a play on the advancing R1.

RULING: The ball has been blocked by offensive team equipment, so should be declared dead. However, instead of the runners being awarded 2 bases for the blocked ball, R1 would be declared out, as the blocked ball prevented the defence from making a play on him. B2 would be returned to the base last touched when the ball became dead. Rule 5.1.7 c); 5.10.3 c) xii.

Case 3 R1 at 1B, B2 hits to RF, F9 throws to F3 who errors the ball, F1 retrieves the ball close to the dead ball line with their foot touching the dead ball line however most of the foot is on the ground in dead ball territory, as R1 rounded second base. The Offensive coach wants the ball called dead and F3 awarded home and B2 at second base as F3 carried the ball dead.

Ruling: Incorrect, this is legal and F3 may make a play on any runner. If a chalk line is used to determine an out-of-play area, the line or imaginary line is considered as being in play. If a fielder is touching the line, they are considered in the field of play and may make a legal catch or throw. If either foot is on the ground completely in dead ball territory (not touching the line), the ball becomes dead; no play may be made, and runners awarded 1 base from the time the ball was unintentionally carried dead.

Rule 5.1.7 d); 5.10.5 Effect a) ii 3. POE27

- Case 4 B1 hits a sharp ground ball to F6 who throws to F3. The throw is wild and strikes the base coach, who is standing in the coach's box. The ball ricochets into the outfield, resulting in B1 advancing to 3B.
- RULING: The ball remains live and in play when it strikes the base coach. B1 remains at 3B.
- Note: If the coach *intentionally* interfered with a throw while in the coaches box the runner closest to home would be out.
- If the coach unintentionally interferes with a thrown ball or the fielder out of the box the runner would not be out unless they interfere with an opportunity to make an out, such as a third base coach out of the box at 3B, looking at the runner going home and the throw hits the coach in the back.
- Rule 5.1.7 e); 5.10.3 c) viii
- 5.1.8 BUNT**
- Case 1 B3 starts at the very back of the batter's box and brings his bat around in front of his body to a 45° bunting position. As the pitch is approaching, he runs at the ball (does not leave the batter's box) and makes contact with the ball without pushing the bat forward toward the ball. Is this considered to be a bunt?
- RULING: Yes. Provided B3 does not swing at the ball, push the bat forward toward the ball while taking the running steps, or chop down on the ball, but merely lets the ball hit the bat, then the action is considered to be a bunt rather than a slap hit.
- Rule 5.1.8; 5.1.38
- 5.1.9 CATCH**
- Case 1 F5 makes a catch on a line drive for the 3rd out. As he is leaving the field he trips over the base and the ball falls out of the glove. Is this a legal catch?
- RULING: Yes, if F5 completed the requirements of a legal catch before falling to the ground.
- 5.1.9 a)
- Case 2 F6 comes across 2nd in a double play pivot. He takes the ball in the glove, removes it with the bare hand, and then loses it, as he is about to throw to 1st.
- RULING: This is a legal catch. It was completed when he physically removed the ball from the glove with the bare hand. The action of dropping the ball occurred in a subsequent action to catching the ball.
- Rule 5.1.9 a)
- Case 3 B2 hits a fly ball to F8, who touches the ball. The ball bounces against his body where it is then clamped with an arm.
- RULING: If F8 then gets the ball in his hand it will become a legal catch. Note: It is nothing until F8 shows control of the ball by holding in the bare hand or glove hand and then it would be a legal catch. Clamping the ball to the body with arm or arms is not control. Runners may advance after the ball is first touched.
- Rule 5.1.9 b)
- Case 4 B1 hits a high foul fly ball to the left of home plate. F5 catches the ball with one foot in foul territory and one foot touching completely in dead ball territory. Is this a legal catch?
- RULING: No. It is ruled "No Catch" and the ball is dead.
- Note: To be a legal catch, F5 must be on, or inside, the dead ball lines, at the time of the catch. This is judged by the position of the player, not the position of the ball.
- Rule 5.1.9 c); POE 27

- Case 5 A defensive player, standing in playable territory, reaches through an open gate in the fence to catch a foul ball.
- RULING: It is a legal catch, and the batter is out, as the player has not left the playing field to take the catch.
Rule 5.1.9 c)
- Case 6 With one out and R2 on 2nd, B3 hits a long fly ball down the left field line. F7 makes a running catch but his momentum carries him into dead ball territory. R2 tags up and is halfway to 3rd when F7 goes out of play with the ball.
- RULING: When the momentum of F7 carried him into dead ball territory this would be considered as unintentionally carrying the ball out of play. B3 is out on the catch and R2 is awarded 3rd.
Ruling 5.1.9 c); 5.10.5 a) ii. 3.
- Case 7 B1 hits a foul fly ball near the backstop. F2 literally climbs the fence with both hands and catches the ball, in his glove, about 3 metres (10 feet) up the fence. Without climbing, he could not possibly have caught the ball before it hit the fence. Is this permitted?
- RULING: Yes, this is permitted. The fence is an extension of the playing field, making it legal for F2 to climb the fence in his attempt to catch the ball. It is a legal catch as the ball has been caught in the glove.
Rule 5.1.9 c)
- Case 8 F2 steps behind the backstop and catches a foul ball.
- RULING: The area behind the backstop is not part of the playing field, so F2 could not legally play the ball.
Rule 5.1.9 c).
- Case 9 B1 hits a fly ball to the outfield or over the infield. F8 catches the ball in his glove or hand but drops the ball when (a) he falls to the ground, or (b) he collides with F7, or (c) he collides with a fence.
- RULING: These situations are not considered to be legal catches because defensive players would never intentionally fall to the ground, run into one another, or collide with a fence. When a fielder is not in control of his body, regardless of length of time with the ball, and he drops the ball before intending or planning to throw the ball, it is not a catch.
Ruling 5.1.9 d)
- Case 10 On a high fly ball, F3 and F4 collide attempting to make the catch. After the contact, F3 catches the ball, but the glove comes off. F4 catches the glove with the ball inside and has possession of both. Is this a legal catch?
- RULING: Yes. This is not considered catching the ball with detached equipment, as long as F4 had control of both the glove and the ball, and the ball or glove did not touch the ground.
Rule 5.1.9 d); 5.5.2 a) ii.
- Case 11 B1 hits a fair line drive that is touched in flight by F4, after which it strikes an umpire standing behind F4. The ball is then caught by F6 before it touches the ground.
- RULING: This is not a catch, so B1 is not out. When a batted fair ball in flight strikes an umpire, it is interpreted to be the same as the ball striking the ground where the umpire is standing.
Rule 5.1.9 e)

5.1.10 CHARGED OFFENSIVE CONFERENCE

Case 1 The coach at 3rd base requests, and is granted, "Time" to confer with the 1st base coach.

RULING: The Umpire should charge the offensive team with a conference.
Rule 5.1.10

Case 2 In the top of the 3rd inning the offensive team coach requests a conference with his batter. In the bottom half of the inning the same coach (now defensive) requests "Time" to converse with his pitcher. Will this be allowed, or has he had his charged conference for the inning?

RULING: The coach is allowed 1 offensive conference per inning and 3 defensive conferences, with any defensive player, per seven-inning game. This conference is legal, provided he has not previously used up his 3 defensive conferences.
Rule 5.1.10; 4.2.1; 5.2

Case 3 The offence requests, and is granted, "Time" by the umpire. The third base coach yells at his runner on second to run hard for home if the batter gets a single. Is this a charged conference?

RULING: Yes. The offensive coach is charged with having a conference because the offensive representative requested "Time" to convey a message (confer) to the runner. Had the coach not requested "Time", but merely yelled the instruction from the dugout, a conference would not be charged.
Rule 5.1.10

Case 4 A base coach has a conference with B1. B1 subsequently reaches 1st and then steals 2nd. The coach now requests, and is granted, "Time" and enters the diamond to have a discussion with his runner.

RULING: This is a second offensive conference in the same inning. The coach should be ejected from the game.
Rule 5.1.10; 5.2 b) Effect

Case 5 A batter requests, and is granted, "Time" to speak to the coach, as he missed the signal.

RULING: The coach should be charged with an offensive conference.
Rule 5.1.10

Case 6 An offensive team coach requests, and is granted, "Time", to speak to R2 at 2nd. In the same inning, B4 swings at 2 high pitches, so the coach insists on another 'Time Out' in order to settle him down.

RULING: The coach is ejected from the game.
Note: The umpire should use preventative umpiring and advise the coach of the penalty for two conferences in the one inning. Ejection should only occur if the coach insists on the additional conference.
Rule 5.1.10; 5.2 b) Effect

Case 7 Smith, the pitcher for Team 'A', singles to F7. The coach now requests, and is granted, "Time" and speaks with Smith as he is putting his warm-up jacket on. The umpire informs Smith and the coach that this is a charged conference.

RULING: This is not a charged conference. A conference should not be charged when a pitcher is putting on a warm-up jacket while on base.
Rule 5.1.10; 5.2 a)

5.1.11 DEAD BALL

Case 1 B1 hits a pitched ball on the ground to F4, who fields the ball and throws wildly toward 1st. The thrown ball goes out of play.

RULING: The Umpire should rule a "Dead Ball" whenever the ball is thrown out of play. Rule 5.1.11; 5.10.5 b) ii.

5.1.12 DELAYED DEAD BALL

Case 1 What is meant by "Delayed Dead Ball"?

RULING: The term applies to situations in which an infraction is not to be ignored, and therefore, the umpires declare the ball dead for the purpose of making an award or awards. [5.1.12]

1) If after the infraction, each runner has advanced to or beyond the base they would have reached as a result of the award, the infraction will be ignored.

2) If The advance of each runner is neither equal to, nor greater than the number of bases awarded as a penalty for the infraction, the Umpire will, after all runners have advanced as far as possible, declare the ball dead, and then penalize the infraction by making the proper award.

3) These situations include:

- An illegal pitch. 4.3.1 Thru 4.3.7 & Effects
- The batter obstructed on a swing. 5.1.32 a); 5.5.1 d) & Effects; 5.10.5 b) iv.
- A batted or thrown ball being touched with detached player equipment. 5.1.13; 5.10.5 c)
- A runner being obstructed. 5.1.32 b) i. to v; 5.10.2
- Plate umpire's interference with the catcher's attempt to throw. 5.1.30 b) & 5.10.3 d) & Effects

5.1.16 FAIR BALL

Case 1 B1 hits a ground ball that strikes (a) the fair portion, or (b) the foul portion, or (c) part of both the fair and foul portions of the double base at 1st.

RULING: In (a) it is a fair ball. In (b) it is a foul ball. In (c) it is a fair ball, since the separation of the two portions should be right on the line, with the entire fair portion in fair territory and the entire foul portion in foul territory. Any ground ball that touches or bounds over the fair portion of the base is fair.

Rule 5.1.16 c); 5.6 a) i.

Case 2 In attempting to sacrifice, B4 bunts foul but the ball spins back toward home and settles on the plate.

RULING: Fair ball. Home plate is always considered in fair territory. Rule 5.1.16 a)

Case 3 B1, a left-hander, swings late and hits a ground ball down the 3rd base line. F5 cannot reach the ball. The ball bounces over the base but lands 25.4cm (10 inches) outside the foul line.

RULING: Fair ball. When a legally batted ball bounds over a base in fair territory, it is a fair ball, even if it lands in foul territory after passing the base. The Umpire must judge the position of the ball at the moment it crosses over the base.

Rule 5.1.16 b)

Case 4 A bounding ball strikes any base and then rolls into foul territory where it settles.

RULING: Fair ball. A legally batted ball, which touches any base, is always a fair ball. Rule 5.1.16 c)

- Case 5 There are no runners on base, when B2 hits a line drive over F3's head. F3, in fair territory, leaps in an attempt to catch the ball and it just lightly tips his glove. It then continues out to foul territory, where it first touches the ground beyond the base.
- RULING: Fair ball. It was first touched over fair territory.
Rule 5.1.16 d)
- Case 6 A line drive touches F1 and strikes the base umpire who is standing between 1st and 2nd. The ball rebounds into foul territory where it is fielded by F9.
- RULING: Fair ball. Any batted ball, striking a player or umpire while over fair territory, is a fair ball regardless of what happens after the contact.
Rule 5.1.16 d); Rule 5.5.1 e) & Effect 2
- Case 7 The catcher is fielding a popup in foul territory, after discarding their mask in fair territory. The ball falls untouched in foul territory, rolls into fair ground, contacts the mask, and is fielded by the pitcher.
- RULING: Fair Ball
Rule 5.1.16 a) & d); 2.1.12
- Case 8 B1 hits a fly ball between 1st and 2nd and it falls untouched to the ground about 1.22m (4 feet) beyond the base line. The ball has backspin and rolls across the foul line about 2.13m (7 feet) from 1st, where it is first touched by F9.
- RULING: Fair ball. Any legally batted ball first landing in fair territory beyond 1st or 3rd is always a fair ball, regardless of where it finally settles or is first touched.
Rule 5.1.16 e)
- Case 9 A batter hits a pop fly ball between 1B and 2B, and it falls untouched to the ground about six feet beyond the base line. The ball has backspin and rolls across the foul line about ten feet from home plate, where F3 is the first to touch it. The batter advances to 2B on the play.
- Ruling: This is a fair ball, as it first hit the ground beyond the bases in fair territory. Leave the batter at 2B with a double. Rule 5.1.16 e)
- Case 10 B1 hits a long drive down the left field line. As the ball clears the fence it is about 0.91m (3 feet) inside the foul pole in fair territory, but it curves and lands in foul territory beyond the fence.
- RULING: Fair ball. A ball, which clears the fence, is judged fair or foul by its position when it leaves the playing field.
Rule 5.1.16 f)
- Case 11 B1 hits a long fly ball down the right field line. The ball curves and strikes the foul pole above the fence, rebounding back into foul territory, where it is recovered by F9.
- RULING: This is a fair ball and B1 would be awarded a home run. A fly ball touching the foul pole is always considered to be a fair ball.
Rule 5.1.16 g)
- Case 12 B1 hits a high fly ball down the 3rd base line. F5 moves into foul territory to catch the ball but the swirling wind carries the ball back over fair territory. F5, still in foul territory, just gets his glove to the ball but drops it. The ball lands and rolls into foul territory, after first being touched over fair territory.
- RULING: This is a fair ball, as it was first touched by F5 in fair territory. The determination of a fair or foul ball is made by the relative position of the ball and the foul line, not the fielder. Rule 5.1.16 d) & h)

Case 13 R1, running from 3rd base, interferes with F5 who is attempting to field a batted ball on fair territory. As a result of the interference, F5 fails to touch the ball, which is first touched by F6 over foul territory.

RULING: This is a fair ball, R1 would be out on the interference, the ball would be declared dead, and the Batter is advanced to 1st Base. Rule 5.1.16 h)

5.1.17 FAKE TAG

Case 1 R1 on 1st steals on the pitch, which gets away from F2. F6, while covering 2nd, makes to 'catch' the ball and simulates a 'tag' on R1, forcing him to slide into the base, even though the ball is still at the back net.

RULING: The action of F6 in forcing R1 to slide while he neither has possession of the ball, nor is not about to receive the ball, is a 'fake tag'. A 'fake tag' is considered to be a form of obstruction and is not allowed for safety reasons. The umpire should warn both teams that fake tagging might result in ejection from the game.
Rule 5.1.17; 5.1.32 b) iii; 5.10.2 b)

5.1.19 FORCE OUT

Case 1 In attempting to field a ground ball, F4 falls down. While on the ground, he slaps the ball toward F3, who picks it up in time to retire the batter-runner.

RULING: This is a legal put out, as the batter was forced to run when he hit the ball.
Rule 5.1.19

Case 2 R1 on 3rd, R2 on 2nd and R3 on 1st with none out. B4 hits a ground ball to F6, so R2 dives back into 2nd. F6 throws to F2 who retires R1. F2 then throws to F3 at 1st and retires B4 on a double play. On seeing R2 still at 2nd, R3, who has advanced toward 2nd, runs back toward 1st. After a rundown, he regains the base and is then tagged by F3. Is R3 out?

RULING: No. R3 is free to return to 1st because the force was removed when B4 was retired. Rule 5.1.19

Case 3 With 2 out and R1 on 3rd, R2 on 2nd and R3 on 1st, B4 hits safely to deep F9. Both R1 and R2 score on the hit but in doing so, R2 misses 3rd base. B4, after rounding 1st base, is subsequently tagged out for the third out. The defence now appeal for R2 missing 3rd in an attempt to remove the run of R1 and the appeal is upheld. Does the run of R1 count?

RULING: Yes, even though it is legal to make a 4th out appeal to remove a run, the run would score.

Note: At the time of the appeal, the force situation that applied at the time of the infraction by R2 (by virtue of B4 becoming a batter-runner) was removed when B4 was tagged out, making it a 'Time' play with the run scoring before the appeal.
Rule 5.1.19; 1.2.5 d)

Case 4 R4 on 2nd and R5 on 1st with none out. B6 hits a sharp ground ball to F5, who throws to F4 to force R5 out at 2nd. F4 attempts to throw to 1st, but R5 slides into F4, who is standing in front of the base and knocks F4 to the ground. R4 advances to 3rd and B6 advances to 1st.

RULING: R5 is out on the force at 2nd. R4 is safe at 3rd and B6 is safe at 1st. As R5 was sliding into the base at the time of contact, no interference is declared, unless R5 deliberately interfered with F4. The ball remains live.

NOTE: If interference was ruled, then R4 would also be out and B6 would be safe at 1B.
Rule 5.1.19; 5.10.3 a) iii; 5.10.3 c) iii. & v.

Case 5 With R1 on 1st, B2 hits a fly ball to deep left field. R1 leaves 1st, rounds 2nd and is between 2nd and 3rd when he believes F7 will be able to catch the ball. With this in mind he retreats, retouching 2nd on his way back to 1st. He is between 2nd and 1st when F7, unable to make the catch, takes a one-hopper and throws to F4 at 2nd in time for an apparent force out of R1. Is this a force out or must R1 be tagged?

RULING: Once R1 retouched 2nd on his way back to 1st the force play was brought back into effect. R1 is out without being tagged.

Rule 5.1.19; 5.10.3 a) iii.

Case 6 R1 on 1st with one out. B3 hits a fly ball to F8, as R1 breaks for 2nd. R1, thinking the ball will be caught, returns part way to 1st. The ball is dropped by F8, as B3 passes R1 and is called out. The ball is then thrown to 2nd for a force out on R1 prior to him reaching 2nd.

RULING: When the ball was dropped R1 was forced to advance to 2nd. However, the force was removed when B3 was called out for passing R1. If the defence did not tag R1 advancing to 2nd, R1 would not be out.

Rule 5.1.19; 5.10.3 a) iii.

5.1.20 FOUL BALL

Case 1 B4 hits a short fly ball between F1 and F2. Without touching any player, the ball strikes the ground and then rolls into foul territory between home and 3rd where it finally settles.

RULING: Foul ball. The decision on the untouched batted ball between home & first base or home & third base is determined by where the ball finally settles.

Rule 5.1.20 a)

Case 2 A left-handed batter swings late and hits a ground ball down the 3rd base line. F5 cannot reach the ball as it bounces past the base, outside the foul line.

RULING: Foul ball. When a legally batted ball bounds past 1st or 3rd on or over foul ground it is a foul ball, even if it returns to fair territory after passing the base.

Rule 5.1.20 b)

Case 3 B1 hits a line drive down the left field line. It strikes the ground in foul territory beyond 3rd, and then bounces into fair territory. B1 advances to 2nd.

RULING: Foul ball. When a legally batted ball first touches foul ground beyond 1st or 3rd, it is a foul ball no matter where it finishes.

Rule 5.1.20 c)

Case 4 B1 hits the ball down straight down onto the catcher's shin guards. The ball then rebounds out into fair territory where it is fielded by F1.

RULING: Foul ball. When a legally batted ball touches the equipment of a player on or over foul ground, it is immediately ruled a foul ball, no matter what happens after the contact.

Rule 5.1.20 d)

Case 6 The bat of B1 breaks into pieces as a result of hitting a pitch. The batted ball, bouncing in foul territory in the direction of 3B, then hits the barrel of the bat causing the ball to roll fair in front of 3B. F5 picks up the ball and throws the ball to F3 before B1 reaches first base.

RULING: Foul ball. B1 is not out for the bat hitting the ball a second time.

Rule 5.1.20 d)

Case 7 B8, with a 2-strike count, swings at the next pitch. The ball goes directly from the bat and hits him on the leg while he is still in the batter's box. The ball rebounds into the infield and is fielded by F1, who throws to F3 well before B8 reaches 1st.

RULING: Foul ball. When a legally batted ball strikes the batter while he is still in the batter's box, it is a foul ball no matter what happens after that.
Rule 5.1.20 e)

Case 8 B1 hits the ball down onto home plate. It rebounds and hits the bat, which is over fair territory and still in B1's hands. B1 is still in the batter's box.

RULING: Foul ball. Although the bat has hit the ball a second time while over fair territory, B1 cannot be called out if he is still in the batter's box at the time of the second contact.
Rule 5.1.20 e)

Case 9 B2 swings at a pitch and the ball flies off the bat directly back to F2's glove. F3, who was expecting a bunt, dives forward and catches the ball after it deflects from the glove of F2. Is B2 out?

RULING: No. This is not a foul fly ball that can legally be caught by any fielder. Had F2 caught the ball cleanly it would have simply been a foul tip and a strike. However, as the ball has been deflected, and a foul tip can only ever be caught by F2, this then becomes a foul ball.
Rule 5.1.20 f)

Case 10 B4 hits a line drive that strikes the pitcher's plate. It then rebounds into foul territory between home and 1st and is fielded by F3.

RULING: Foul ball. "While on or over foul territory touches any object foreign to the natural ground." Remember: Touching a foreign object in foul territory makes it foul. Touching a foreign object in fair territory does not make it fair.
Rule 5.1.20 g)

5.1.21 FOUL TIP

Case 1 A batted ball goes directly from the bat to the protector of F2 or the umpire and rebounds into F2's glove.

RULING: Foul ball. The ball becomes dead when it strikes the protector. It is not a foul tip, if the catch is a rebound unless the ball first touched the catcher's hand(s) or glove.
Rule 5.1.21 a) i.

Case 2 B1, with a 1-1 count, bunts the ball in front of the plate. F2 lunges and catches the ball before it touches the ground. The ball does not go higher than B1's head, so the umpire rules a foul tip. He returns B1 to the batter's box with a 1 ball 2 strike count.

RULING: This is not a foul tip, as the ball did not go directly back to F2's glove from the bat. F2 went forward to the ball. This should be ruled a legal catch, just the same as if F3 or F5 made the catch.
Rule 5.1.21 a) i; 5.1.9.

Case 3 B1 swings at a ball that is over his head, tips it and is caught by F2. Is this a foul tip or is B1 out because of the foul ball being caught?

RULING: This is not a foul tip, as the batted ball has gone higher than B1's head, so he is out on a caught fly ball.
Rule 5.1.21 a) ii; 5.1.9

Case 4 With R1 on 2nd, B2 swings at a pitch and just tips the ball. The ball is caught by F2. May R1 advance without retouching 2nd?

RULING: This is a foul tip, and a foul tip is the same as any strike. R1 may advance without retouching, as the ball is alive. If the batted ball is not caught, it is not a foul tip and is ruled a foul ball.

Rule 5.1.21 a) & b)

Case 5 1-ball, 2-strikes count on the batter with no outs. The pitched ball hits the ground when the batter swings and foul tips it back to catcher's glove; the catcher then completes the catch.

Ruling: If the batter had swung and missed the pitch, they could have run on the third strike because a pitched ball touching the ground is considered a trapped ball. However, because the ball was tipped, the result is the action of the ball off the bat, and in this case, it is a foul tip, and the batter is out.

Rule 5.1.21 a); 5.4.3 c) iii; 5.4.4 a) i.

5.1.23 ILLEGALLY BATTED BALL

Case 1 B2 swings at the 1st pitch and fouls it back into the back net. At the time of contact B2 had one foot on the ground and entirely out of the batter's box.

RULING: This is an illegally batted ball, as B2 must have both feet inside the batter's box at the time of contacting the pitch.

Rule 5.1.23 a)

Case 2 F1 delivers the ball to B1, who has one-foot touching home plate as he swings and completely misses the pitch.

RULING: A strike is called. This is not an illegally batted ball. The ball must be hit (fair or foul) for it to be an illegally batted ball.

Rule 5.1.23 b)

Case 3 The batter is standing in the batter's box and steps on home plate to avoid being hit by the pitch. The pitched ball accidentally strikes the batter's bat while their foot is on home plate.

RULING: The ball is dead, and the batter is "out" for making contact with a pitched ball while standing outside the batter's box and on home plate. No intent to hit the ball is necessary.

Rule 5.1.23 b); 5.4.4 b) iv

Case 4 B1 takes his position at the back of the batter's box. As F1 begins his wind-up, B1 steps back toward F2 (one foot out of the batter's box) and then returns to the box as he runs toward F1 and makes contact with the pitch. Is this a legal action?

RULING: No, even though B1 was completely in the box at the time of contacting the pitch. The action of stepping out and then returning to the box during the pitching motion prior to hitting the ball creates an illegally batted ball.

Rule 5.1.23 d)

5.1.24 ILLEGALLY CAUGHT BALL

Case 1 B1 hits a pitched ball to the outfield. The fielder removes his cap and catches the ball in his cap before the ball touches the ground in fair territory.

RULING: This is an illegally caught ball, as the catch was completed in a part of his uniform detached from its proper place.

Rule 5.1.24; 5.10.1 k) ii; 5.10.5 c)

- Case 2** Bases loaded, 1 out. Batter hits a high fly ball that is about one-half way between the pitcher plate and home plate and:
- a) The pitcher touches the ball but does not catch it, the catcher scoops the ball up off the ground with their mask, or
 - b) The catcher catches the ball with their mask, no other fielder had contacted the ball.
- In play a) the ball is declared fair and is a live ball when first touched by the pitcher. The ball remains fair and becomes a delayed dead ball when scooped up by the catcher. Both the Infield Fly Rule and the Detached Equipment Rule should be enforced.
- In play b) the ball is declared fair and is a delayed dead ball as the ball was contacted by detached equipment. As it is a fair ball, the Infield Fly Ball Rule is enforced and as the fair ball was touched by detached equipment, the Detached Equipment Rule is also enforced.
- In summary, in both a) and b), the batter-runner is out under the Infield Fly Rule all other runners are awarded 3 bases under the Detached Equipment Rule.
- Rule 5.1.13; 5.1.24; 5.1.26; 5.5.2 a) v and 5.11 Effects c
- Case 3** R4 on 3rd. On the first pitch B5 hits a long fly ball down the left field line. R4 holds up as F7, in attempting to make a catch, throws his glove toward the ball, which has curved into foul territory. The ball lodges and stays in the glove, which drops to the ground. F7 picks up the glove and claims the catch as R4 races home.
- RULING:** This is an illegal catch as it was completed in equipment detached from its proper place. As the 'illegal catch' occurred in foul territory, it is simply a foul ball. R4 returns to 3rd and B5 comes back to bat again with a one strike count.
- Rule 5.1.24; 5.1.20; 5.4.3 d) iii.
- 5.1.26 INFIELD FLY**
- Case 1** R1 on 2nd and R2 on 1st with none out, when B3 gives every indication he is about to bunt. At the last moment he swings away and loops the ball about 3 to 5 metres (10-15 feet) in the air. The ball drops out of F3's glove.
- RULING:** This is an Infield Fly and B3 is out, even though the ball was dropped. B3 did not bunt but swung at the ball. Rule 5.1.26; 5.5.2 a) v.
- Case 2** Bases are loaded with one out. B5 bunts but only succeeds in popping the ball into the air between F2 and F1. The ball lands and spins back to F2, who fields it but too late to get an out on any of the runners. F2 appeals to the umpire that B5 should be out on an 'Infield Fly'.
- RULING:** F2 is incorrect. An Infield Fly cannot be declared on a bunted fly ball. Rule 5.1.26
- Case 3** Bases loaded with one out. B5 hits a sharp line drive straight back to F1, who gets his glove to the ball but cannot hold the catch. The ball gets away from F1 and it is recovered by F3 but too late to get an out on any of the runners. F3 appeals to the umpire that B5 should be out on an 'Infield Fly'.
- RULING:** F3 is incorrect. An Infield Fly cannot be declared on a line drive. Rule 5.1.26
- Case 4** R1 on 2nd and R2 on 1st with one out. The infield shifts to the left and F7 comes in and plays at 3rd. B4 hits a fly ball that F7 drops.
- RULING:** This is an Infield Fly and B4 is out. Even though it was an outfielder that dropped the ball, it is classed as an Infield Fly because he was stationed in the infield. Rule 5.1.26

- Case 5 There are runners at 1st and 2nd with no outs. The batter hits an infield fly ball that can be caught with ordinary effort. The umpire rules that the batted ball is an infield fly. However, F4 catches the ball with an illegal glove. The offence notices the illegal equipment and appeals to the plate umpire.
- RULING: The batter is "Out" on the infield fly. The ball remains alive and no option is given to the offence. The illegal glove should be removed from the game. The illegal glove made no difference because the catch was not necessary for the out.
Rule 5.1.26
- Case 6 The Umpire declares an Infield Fly but the ball curves and lands in foul territory where it settles.
- RULING: The announcement is reversed. This is not an Infield Fly, as the ball has settled, untouched, in foul territory, making it a foul ball.
Rule 5.1.26; 5.5.2 a) v. Effect
- Case 7 R1 on 2nd and R2 on 1st with one out, when B4 hits a high foul fly ball between home and 1st. The ball drops to the ground without being touched and comes to rest in fair territory halfway between 1st and home.
- RULING: This is an Infield Fly, as the fly ball has settled in fair territory.
Rule 5.1.26; 5.5.2 a) v. Effect
- Case 8 Bases are loaded with none out, so the Infield Fly rule is in effect. B4 hits a fly ball that is declared to be an "Infield Fly", but the ball is dropped by the fielder. Is the ball live?
- RULING: Yes, the ball is live, B4 is out under the "Infield Fly" rule, even though it was not caught. All other runners advance at their own risk.
Rule 5.1.26; 5.5.2 a) v.
- Case 9 R1 on 2B, R2 on 1B with one out. As a defensive manoeuvre, F4 moves to short F8. The batter hits a fly ball that could easily be handled by F4. (a) The catch is made; (b) the ball is dropped.
- RULING: In (a), the batter is out, and the ball is live. This is considered only a fly ball. (b) Ball is live and is not considered an "Infield Fly" as F4 is not in their normal fielding position around second base.
Rule 5.1.26; 5.5.2 a) ii; 3.1.13
- Case 10 R1 on 3B, R2 on 2B, and R3 on 1B with one out. B4 hits a high infield fly, and "Infield Fly" is ruled. The ball, uncaught, rolls toward the 1B line, where it touches B4 over fair territory running to 1B. The catcher now grabs the ball and throws to 3B to retire R1 who is off the base when tagged. Is this a double play?
- RULING: Since the umpires ruled infield fly, the status of the ball is not known until it strikes B4 in fair territory. This is interference and the ball becomes dead immediately, and therefore, it is not possible to retire R1 on a play at 3B. B4 is out and the bases remain full.
Rule 5.1.26; 5.5.2 b) vi; 5.1.30 c)
- 5.1.28 INTENTIONAL BASE ON BALLS OR INTENTIONAL WALK**
- Case 1 F2 advises the Umpire that he wishes to intentionally walk B1. Must F1 pitch to the batter, or can the umpire direct the batter to 1st?
- RULING: The Umpire should declare the ball dead and direct B1 to first, as it is not necessary to pitch the ball on an intentional base on balls.
Rule 5.1.28; 5.5.1 c) ii.

Case 2 The defensive coach advises the umpire that he wishes to intentionally walk B1. Can the Plate Umpire accept notification of an intentional walk from the coach?

RULING: Yes. It is permissible for F1, F2 or the coach to notify the Plate Umpire of their desire to give the batter an intentional walk.

Rule 5.1.28; 5.5.1 c) ii.

Case 3 With R2 on 2nd F2 notifies the umpire that he wishes to intentionally walk B3. The Umpire directs B3 to go to 1st. Before doing so B3 enters the dugout to return his bat and then advances to the base. The Umpire then rules B3 out for entering the dugout before advancing to the base. Was the Umpire correct?

RULING: No! The Umpire would have been correct if the walk were issued on a '4 balls' basis as the ball would still be alive, but as the ball is dead on an intentional walk this rule cannot be applied.

Rule 5.1.28; 5.5.2 a) iv.

Case 4 R1 is on 3rd and R2 is on 2nd with none out when F1 pitches a ball to B3. At this point F1 advises that he wishes to intentionally walk B3. B3 turns to the Umpire and suggests that F1 cannot do this, as an intentional walk can only be administered upon entering the batter's box and before a pitch has been thrown.

RULING: B3's suggestion is incorrect, as an intentional base on balls can be administered at any time from the time B3 enters the batter's box and until such time as B3 completes his turn at bat. The Umpire should grant the intentional base on balls.

Rule 5.1.28; 5.5.1 c) ii. 1.

Case 5 When B4 hears that their teammate B5 is to be walked intentionally as well, B4 immediately goes to 2B and does not stop at 1B.

RULING: The Umpires should not allow this to happen. When they see B4 go directly to 2B, instruct them to touch 1B first. If B4 insists on going directly to 2B, no appeal will be honoured, for not touching the bases in order. It is a dead ball, so have the first runner go touch 1B, and then administer the second intentional walk.

Rule 5.1.28; 5.5.1 c) ii 2

5.1.30 INTERFERENCE

Case 1 R1 is on 1B, when B2 hits a grounder to F4. The ball bounces off F4's chest and as they reach down to pick up the ball, R1 collides with F4 in the base line.

RULING: This is interference. The ball is dead.

Rule 5.1.30 a); 5.10.3 c) iii

Case 2 R1 is on second when B6 hits the ball to the shortstop. While running directly to third, R1 jumps over the batted ball to avoid being struck. F6 misses the ball just behind the base line.

RULING: R1's advance is legal. The ball is live. [5.1.30 a); 5.10.4 a)]

Note: The runner must be given the opportunity to run bases, as long as they do not break stride or intentionally put themselves in front of the fielder with intent, it is not considered interference.

Rule 5.1.30 a); 5.10.4 a)

Case 3 R1 is on 3B with one out. B4 hits a fair fly ball which F5 should catch with little effort. R1, while leading off brushes the arm of F5 accidentally. F5 still makes an easy catch. R1 easily returns to 3B

RULING: As the Umpires did not believe the action of R1 was intentional, and this contact did not interfere with F5's opportunity to make the play, B4 is called out on the fly ball and R1 is safe a 3rd base.

Note: Not all contact with a fielder by a runner constitutes interference. Umpires should observe the actions and reactions of runners and fielders to help with this judgment. The umpire must decide if the fielder is affected by this contact, a slight hesitation before making the call here is appropriate, although this is not a delayed dead ball situation Rule 5.1.30 a)

Case 4 R1 on 1st. He attempts to steal 2nd on the pitch but the plate umpire interferes with F2's throw and the ball goes to centre field. R1 then advances to 3rd.

RULING: This is Umpire interference. As an out was not obtained on the play, R1 must return to 1st.

Rule 5.1.30 b); 5.10.3 d) & Effect

Case 5 With R1 on 3rd and R2 on 2nd, B3 hits a ground ball toward F5. Before the ball reaches F5, R1 touches it over fair ground while proceeding toward home plate. R2 reaches 3rd after the contact.

RULING: R1 is out for interference. R2 returns to 2nd, as the interference occurred prior to him legally touching 3rd. B3 remains at 1st.

Rule 5.1.30 c) ii; 5.10.3 c) i.

Case 6 A spectator runs on to the field and kicks an overthrown ball away from a fielder.

RULING: The ball is dead immediately when anybody not associated with a team creates interference.

Rule 5.1.30 d); 5.1.7 b)

5.1.31 LINE DRIVE

Case 1 B1 hits a pitched ball sharply, pointedly, quickly, briskly and/or directly into the playing field.

RULING: B1 has hit a line drive fly ball. Depending on the distance the batted ball travels; a line drive fly ball will take less time to reach the ground than a normal or routine fly ball, which normally has an appreciable arc on the flight. Rule 5.1.31.

5.1.32 OBSTRUCTION

Case 1 R2 on 2nd, when B3 singles to right field. He rounds 3rd attempting to score but crashes into the plate umpire. F5 tags him while he is still lying on the ground. The offensive coach wants obstruction called.

RULING: R2 is out. Contact between R2 and the umpire does not constitute obstruction. The ball remains alive and in play. Obstruction is only ruled when a fielder impedes the progress of a batter-runner or runner.

Note: The only time when an umpire comes into effect is when the ball is lodged in their uniform, or with the throw on an attempted steal, or when they are hit by a batted ball before the ball passes an infielder

Rule 5.1.32 b); 5.1.30.

- Case 2 B8 hits a long ground ball down the right field line. It is an obvious double but as he is about to round 1st on his way to 2nd, he has to slow down and change stride because F3 is standing on the base.
- RULING: This is obstruction by F3. A fielder not in possession of the ball may not impede the progress of a runner who is legally running bases.
Rule 5.1.32 b) i.
- Case 3 R1 steals 2nd on the pitch and just beats the throw from F2. F6, after taking the throw at the base, then nudges R1, forcing him to overbalance and lose contact with the base. F6 then tags R1.
- RULING: Even though F6 has possession of the ball, the action of pushing R1 off the base in an attempt to get an out is a form of obstruction, so R1 would be declared safe.
Rule 5.1.32 b) iv.
- Case 4 R1 on 2nd and R2 on 1st. At the start of the pitch, both F3 and F4 are positioned in a direct line to the next base. Is this obstruction if the ball is not hit to either of these fielders and R2 must run around the defensive player?
- RULING: Yes. There is no penalty for the defensive players to position themselves anywhere in fair territory, at the start of the pitch. However, if the ball is not hit to them for a play, they must move out of R2's base path. If they do not it is obstruction.
Rule 5.1.32 b) i. & ii; 5.10.2 a) & b)
- Case 5 B1 bunts the ball just out in front of the plate. F2 fields the ball and throws the ball late to F3, who stands on the entire foul portion of the double base, causing B1 to slow down. Before B1 touches the foul portion of the base, F3 catches the thrown ball, while still entirely on the foul portion of the base, and then steps back onto the fair portion of the base to record the out on B1.
- RULING: The Umpire should rule and call "Obstruction" on F3.
Note: When a fielder at first reaches across into foul territory to catch a thrown ball, and uses all of the foul portion of the base, and the batter-runner slows down for fear of colliding with the defensive player and, in the umpire's judgement, the batter-runner would have been safe had he not slowed down, then the umpire should rule 'Obstruction'.
Rule 5.1.32 b); 5.10.2 a) & c); 5.6 a) ii.
- Case 6 R1 is at 3rd when F1 delivers a wild pitch. As F2 scrambles to recover the ball, F1 heads home to cover the plate, and R1 advances trying to score. F1 gets to home plate first, slips, falls and winds up sitting on home plate – completely covering the plate. Is F1 guilty of obstruction if (a) F2's thrown ball beats R1, or (b) R1 beats F2's thrown ball, or (c) R1 tries to avoid injuring F1 and slows down before attempting to touch the plate.
- RULING: The question is whether to rule obstruction. If the ball beats R1, then this entitles F1 to be in any position to make a play, so he is entitled to block the plate, just as F2 would be on a more conventional play. However, if R1 slows down before attempting to touch the plate, and you are certain that R1 would be safe had he not slowed down, then rule 'obstruction'. If R1 beats the throw without slowing down, then rule 'obstruction'.
Rule 5.1.32 b) i.

- Case 7** F2 attempts to pick R1 off at 1st. R1 collides with F4, who has come behind R1 and is completely blocking the base. After the collision, F4 catches the ball and tags R1, who is still scrambling to find the base.
- RULING:** This is an illegal block, so 'Obstruction' should be called, with R1 safe at 1st. A fielder may not block a base without possession of the ball, even if he is at the base and about to receive the thrown ball. He must give the runner room to reach the base without any contact being made. Once he has possession of the ball, he may then legally block the runner's access to the base.
Rule 5.1.32 b) i; 5.10.2 c)
- Case 8** None out and R1 on 1st, when B2 hits a double to left field. B2 is obstructed by F3 as he rounds 1st and is tagged out sliding into 2nd. At the time of the tag, R1 has rounded 3rd and is more than halfway to home.
- RULING:** A Delayed Dead Ball is signalled at the time of the obstruction. The Umpire shall call "Time" when the out is made on B2 sliding into 2nd. B2 is awarded 2nd and R1 is awarded home, as he would have reached home had the obstruction not occurred.
Rule 5.1.32 b); 5.10.2 c)
- Case 9** R1 on 3rd, R2 on 2nd and R3 on 1st with none out. B4 singles, allowing R1 to score and R2 to advance to the plate. The throw comes to the plate and R2 is caught in a rundown between 3rd and home. Meanwhile, R3 advances to 3rd, while B4 advances to 2nd. R2 is obstructed going back to 3rd and is tagged out by F2, who then tags R3 standing on 3rd. On the play, the umpire declares R3 out on the tag and awards R2 3rd for the obstruction.
- RULING:** The umpire was in error. Obstruction is a Delayed Dead Ball call but when F2 tagged R2 prior to him reaching 3rd, the ball should have been ruled dead. R3 cannot be tagged out with a dead ball. R2 should be awarded 3rd, R3 returned to 2nd and B4 returned to 1st. R1 scores and there is still none out.
Rule 5.1.32 b); 5.10.2 c) & d)
- Case 10** R1 on 2nd. A sharply hit ground ball deflects off F1's glove toward F6, who (a) is not making any attempt to field the ball, or (b) is clearly in the act of fielding the ball. In both cases R1 makes contact with F6.
- RULING:** In (a) F6 is called for obstruction on R1. In (b) R1 is out for interference and the ball is dead.
Note: The fact that the ball was touched by F1 first has no bearing.
The deciding question is 'was F6 fielding a fair-batted ball?'
Rule 5.1.32 b) ii; 5.10.3 c) iii.
- Case 11** B1, a left-handed hitter, bunts a pitched ball along the 3rd base line. F5 and F3 both charge forward to field the ball, and F4 moves over to cover 1st. As F5 grabs the ball, B1 bumps into F3 in fair territory and just before reaching the one metre (3 ft) running lane. F5's throw to F4 glances off B1, still in fair territory, and rolls into the outfield. Is this play interference, obstruction, or incidental contact?
- RULING:** The umpire should signal a Delayed Dead Ball, call "Obstruction", and the ball remains alive. F3 has no valid reason to be in B1's path and prevented B1 from moving into the safe haven of the one metre (3 ft) lane in foul territory. Although an obstructed runner can later be guilty of interference, in this case it seems the obstruction caused the interference, unless the umpire rules the interference intentional, or an unrelated act.
Rule 5.1.32 b) ii; 5.5.2 b) v; 5.10.2 d) i.

- Case 12 R1 is on 2nd and R2 is on 1st when B3 hits a ground ball toward F4. Both runners, being forced, begin to advance as F4 moves in and fields the ball. F4, not wanting to tag R2 and breaking the force before throwing to F5, deliberately stands in R2's path and forces him to slow down. F4 makes no attempt to retire R2 and then throws to F5 for the out on R1. F5 completes the double play on R2 by throwing to F6 who is now covering 2nd.

RULING: Even though F4 was in possession of the ball, the fact that he deliberately slowed R2's progress without making a play on him constituted obstruction. The play would be permitted to continue and R1 would be out on the force, as R1 was not affected by the obstruction. However, R2 would be declared safe at 2nd, as he cannot be put out between the 2 bases where he was obstructed.
Rule 5.1.32 b) v; 5.10.2 d)

- Case 13 R1 on 3rd and R2 on 2nd with none out, when B3 hits a ground ball into the gap between F5 and F6. F5 cuts in front of F6 and, just as he grabs the ball, R2 contacts F6, who is on the base line. F5 fumbles the ball by knocking it in front of him and all runners are safe.

RULING: When two or more fielders attempt to field a batted ball, only one is entitled to the benefit of the interference rule. Since F5 actually touched the ball, R2's contact with F6 does not constitute interference. It could have been obstruction. Since all runners were safe, it is considered as incidental contact.

Note: Contact with a runner and a fielder does not always constitute Obstruction. Umpires should observe the actions and reactions of runners and fielders to help with this judgment. The umpire must decide if the runner is affected by this contact, a slight hesitation before making the call here is appropriate, although this is not a delayed dead ball situation. Rule 5.1.32 b); 5.10.4 c)

5.1.33 ON-DECK BATTER

- Case 1 The sixth batter in the line-up is starting his turn at bat. The eighth batter wishes to get in some extra practice swings and moves into the on-deck circle. Is this allowed?

RULING: The eighth batter would not be allowed to use the on-deck circle. The only offensive player allowed to use the on-deck circle would be the batter who is next scheduled to bat. In this case the on-deck batter is the seventh player in the batting order. Rule 5.1.33

5.1.34 OPTION PLAY

- Case 1 A declared Illegal Pitcher returns to the pitcher's plate and delivers a pitch to B1. B1 hits the ball but only succeeds in grounding out to F6. At this point the offensive team brings it to the umpire's attention that the pitcher is, in fact, an Illegal Pitcher.

RULING: The Illegal Pitcher returning to the game results in the offensive team being given an option. The manager of the offensive team is given an option to either take the result of the play or have the batter resume batting, assuming the count he had prior to the detection of the Illegal Pitcher.

Rule 5.1.34 e)

5.1.35 OVER SLIDE

- Case 1 R1 slides into 1st but loses contact with the base by sliding past it (a) during his advance from home plate, or (b) on his return to 1st after attempting to advance to 2nd. In both cases he is tagged with the ball while off the base.

RULING: R1 is considered to have over slid the base. In (a) he is safe because he may over slide or overrun at 1st on his first attempt at the base. In (b) he is out for being tagged while off base.

Rule 5.1.35

5.1.36 OVERTHROW

Case 1 B1 hits a pitched ball on the ground toward F5. F5 fields the ball cleanly but only manages to throw it wildly toward F3. The thrown ball (a) lands in foul territory and rolls out of play, (b) lands amongst the spectators in the stands, or (c) makes contact with the coach who is standing at the opening of the bench area.

RULING: The play is described as an overthrow, because the ball is thrown from one fielder to another, in an effort to retire B1 who has not yet reached base or is off base, and the ball goes beyond the boundary lines of the playing field, or becomes blocked. In this case the ball becomes dead and B1 is awarded 2nd base.

Rule 5.1.36; 5.10.5 Effect b) ii.

5.1.38 SLAP HIT

Case 1 B1 squares around, shaping to bunt the pitch. At the last moment he swings away in a controlled manner, contacting the ball and placing it just over the infield.

RULING: This action of controlling the hit in a short swinging motion is known as a 'slap hit' and should not be considered as a bunt.

Rule 5.1.38 a)

Case 2 B3 starts at the very back of the batter's box. As the pitch is approaching, he runs at the ball (does not leave the batter's box) and makes contact by sweeping the bat at the ball. Is this considered to be a bunt?

RULING: No. The action of running toward the pitcher in this manner is considered to be a running 'slap hit' and should not be considered a bunt.

Rule 5.1.38

5.1.41 STRIKE ZONE

Case 1 B1 takes his stance in the batter's box with his feet wide apart. This causes his shoulders to be lower than if he was standing with his feet closer together.

RULING: If it is his natural stance, to be called a strike, the ball, before touching the ground, must enter that space over any part of home plate and the complete ball must be between the bottom of the batter's sternum (breastbone) and the bottom of the batter's kneecap. The Umpire will regard the strike zone, as it would be in B1's natural stance, if he takes an unusual crouch in order to reduce the size of the strike zone.

Rule 5.1.41

Case 2 Must the entire ball pass through the width of the batter's strike zone to be called a strike?

RULING: No. It is a strike when any part of the ball, on a legal pitch, enters the strike zone (over home plate), but the complete ball must be between the bottom of the batter's sternum (breastbone) and the bottom of the batter's kneecap.

The Umpire shall determine the height of the batter's zone according to the natural stance of the batter when he swings at the pitch.

Rule 5.1.41; 5.4.3 c)

5.1.42 TAG

Case 1 F2 touches R3 with the ball in his glove. The ball does not come in contact with R3.

RULING: Touching with the glove or hand that holds the ball is the same as touching with the ball and is considered to be a legal touch.

Rule 5.1.42 a)

- Case 2 B1 hits a ground ball to F3, who gathers it in. He runs over to the base line and touches B1 but juggles and drops the ball.
- RULING: This is not a legal touch, as the ball has not been controlled at the time of the touch.
Rule 5.1.42 a); 5.10.4 h) i.
- Case 3 F3 fields the batted ball near the pitcher's circle. He then lunges at B1 as he runs to 1st and just manages to touch him with the ball in the bare hand.
- RULING: As the ball has been kept under control, the action of touching B1 with the ball in the bare hand is considered to be a legal touch.
Rule 5.1.42 a)
- Case 4 F3 fields a batted ball and touches 1st base with his foot before B1 arrives.
- RULING: This is considered to be a legal action of tagging the base.
Rule 5.1.42 b)
- Case 5 A thrown ball from the outfield draws F2 into the base path of R1 trying to score. The ball and R1 arrive simultaneously, causing contact between F2 and R1. F2 drops the ball and R1 scores; the contact is neither intentional nor flagrant.
- RULING: The run counts. There is no obstruction or interference because contact of this nature is considered as incidental contact.
Rule 5.1.42 b); 5.10.4 h) i.
- 5.1.43 TAGGING UP**
- Case 1 R3 leaves 3rd on a fly ball to F8. However, he manages to return to his base before F8 catches the ball. He then advances to home.
- RULING: By returning to the base before the fly ball is touched, R3 has legally retouched (tagged up) his base, so the advance to home is legal.
Rule 5.1.43
- 5.1.46 TRAPPED BALL**
- Case 1 B3 hits a low line drive to F5, who dives forward in an attempt to catch the ball. The ball skids off the ground and straight into the outstretched glove of F5. The ball barely leaves the ground before going into the glove.
- RULING: This is a 'trapped ball' - not a catch. For B3 to be out, F5 would have to throw to F3 before B3 reaches 1st.
Rule 5.1.46 a)
- Case 2 B3 hits a ground ball to F6 who fields and throws to F3. The throw is not a good one, as F3 has to really stretch out to receive the throw. F3 manages to get his glove over the ball, which is still on the ground, as B3 arrives at 1st.
- RULING: B3 would be declared safe, as F3 has only managed to trap the ball, not catch it.
Rule 5.1.46 c)

- Case 3 F3 reaches for a low throw and traps the ball on the ground (glove over the ball on the ground), F3 shows he has control of the ball by raising the ball off the ground:
(a) before the batter-runner touches 1B, or (b) after the batter-runner touches 1B.

Ruling: (a) The batter-runner is out if F3 can show control of the ball by raising the ball off the ground before the batter-runner reaches 1B.

(b) If the batter-runner reaches 1B before F3 can show control, batter-runner is called safe, because this is judged a trapped ball.

Rule 5.1.46 c); 5.5.2 a) iii

5.1.50 WILD THROW

- Case 1 F6 fields a batted ball and throws to F3. The throw is in the dirt and draws F3 off the base. F3 knocks the ball down but cannot control it and it rebounds into the infield.

RULING: This is a wild throw, as the ball has not been controlled, has not been blocked and remains in play. Scorers use the term 'wild throw' extensively.

Rule 5.1.50

- Case 2 B5 lays down a bunt just in front of home plate. F2 fields and throws to F4 covering 1st in an attempt to retire B5. The throw is high, deflects from F4's glove, gets past F9 who is backing up, and goes nearly to the fence. B5 continues on and finishes up at 3rd before the ball is retrieved and returned to the infield. The defence appeal that, as the ball was overthrown by F2 before B5 reached 1st; he should only be entitled to 2nd.

RULING: Although the ball has been thrown beyond the fielder it was intended for, it has not gone beyond the boundary lines of the playing field, nor has it been blocked. B5 would be entitled to remain at 3rd.

Rule 5.1.50; 5.10.1 b)

5.3 ON-DECK BATTER

- Case 1 A new game is about to start as F1 takes his warm-up pitches. B1, the leadoff batter, decides to stand near the batter's box in order to see what type of pitches F1 throws. Is this permissible?

RULING: No, the Umpire should request B1 to remain in his on-deck circle until the warm-up is completed. B1 may then enter the batter's box.

Rule 5.3 a)

- Case 2 B1 is notorious for hitting foul balls, on his open side, toward his dugout. The On-Deck Batter, fearing for his safety, decides to move over and use the opposition's On-Deck circle. Is this permissible?

RULING: Yes. The On-Deck Batter may move over to the other team's On-Deck circle to be behind the Batter for safety reasons.

Rule 5.3 c) i

- Case 3 The on-deck batter carries 3 legal bats into the on-deck circle and uses all 3 to warm-up at the same time. Is this permissible?

RULING: No. Only two legal bats are permitted, and the on-deck batter must hold both.

Rule 5.3 c) iii

- Case 4 The on-deck batter appears in the on-deck circle and attempts to use a bat that has a metal or plastic donut (a) loosely, or (b) mechanically, fastened to the thick end of the bat.

RULING: It is an illegal warm-up bat in both (a) and (b) and must be removed from the game. Rule 5.3 c) iii. Effect

- Case 5 Prior to the game, the Umpire detects an illegal warm-up bat in the dugout. The bat is removed from the game and the manager notified accordingly. During the game, the Umpire notices that a player of the team is using the illegal warm-up bat that was previously removed.
- RULING: The player using the bat is ejected from the game.
Rule 5.3 c) iii. Effect
- Case 6 R3 on 2nd. B4 hits a long ground ball to F9, who fields and throws to F2 in an attempt to retire R3 advancing to the plate. On the hit, the on-deck batter leaves the on-deck circle to direct R3 approaching the plate. At no time does he interfere with the play but when R3 is called "safe" the defence appeal for an out because he left his circle.
- RULING: No one is out. The on-deck batter may leave his circle to direct runners approaching home plate. R3's run counts.
Rule 5.3 c) iv 2
- Case 7 R1 on 2nd and R2 on 1st. A pitched ball gets away from F2 and rolls near the on-deck batter, who remains in the on-deck circle. F2, in throwing to F4 in an attempt to pick off R2, hits the on-deck batter, who is still in his circle. The runners reach 2nd and 3rd safely.
- RULING: This is interference by the on-deck batter. The ball is dead, R1 is out and R2 must return to 1st. When the on-deck batter interferes, whether intentional or not, with a defensive player's opportunity to make a play on a runner, the runner closest to home at the time of the interference, is out.
Rule 5.3 c) iv. 4 Effect 1; 5.10.3 c) xi.
- Case 8 R3 on 3rd when B4 hits a foul fly ball that F2 has a good chance of catching. The next batter is standing in the on-deck circle and (a) makes no move to get out of F2's way and they collide, or (b) attempts to get out of the way but still collides with F2, preventing him from catching the foul ball. In both (a) and (b) the Umpire declares the ball dead and calls B4 out for interference. The offensive team complains that the on-deck batter is entitled to stay in his circle.
- RULING: The Umpire was correct in both instances. B4 is out. The ball is dead at the time of the interference so R3 returns to 3rd base; the last base held at the time of the pitch.
Rule 5.3 c) iv 4 effect 2
- 5.4 BATTING**
- 5.4.1 BATTING ORDER**
- Case 1 B7 bats instead of B5. With a 3-2 count on B7, the batting infraction is detected by (a) B5, or (b) F6, or (c) the coach of either team, or (d) B7.
- RULING: In all cases there is no penalty, as the infraction has been detected before B7 has completed his turn at bat. B5 simply takes the place of B7 in the batter's box with a count of 3 balls and 2 strikes.
Rule 5.4.1 Effects a)

- Case 2 The batting order is B1, B2, B3, B4, B5 and so on. With two out, B1 bats and gets a safe hit. B5 now comes to bat and hits the ball to F6, who throws to F4 and retires B1 on the force out. This is the third out of the inning, but before the players leave the field, the defensive team lodge an appeal for B5 batting out of order. Is this a legal appeal, and if so, does it result in a 'fourth' out?
- RULING: This is a legal appeal, but it does not result in an additional out, as it is not being made to remove a run. If the appeal were not made, B6 would be the leadoff batter in the next innings, with B3 & B4 missing a turn. However, with this appeal being made, the correct batting order is re-instated, so B3, the batter following B2 who should have batted and who would have been called out had B1 not been the third out, will leadoff the next inning, followed by B4 etc.
Rule 5.4.1 Effect b) vi.
- Case 3 R1 on 1st with one out, when B3 bats out of order in place of B2. He hits into a double play and both R1 and B3 are forced out. The offence now appeals for batting out-of-order, in an attempt to overturn the double play.
- RULING: The appeal is disallowed and both outs stand, as the offensive team cannot legally appeal for batting out-of-order.
Rule 5.4.1 Effects; 1.1.1
- Case 4 With R2 on 2nd and two out, B5 appears at bat instead of B4. On the 1st pitch, a strike, R2 steals 3rd legally and the umpire calls him safe. The defence now realise that B5 is an improper batter and brings it to the attention of the Umpire.
- RULING: B4 shall take his place at the plate assuming the 1 strike count of B5. The advance of R2 to 3rd is legal, as it was made without assistance from B5. No one is out.
Rule 5.4.1 Effects a) i. & ii.
- Case 5 The batting order is B1, B2, B3, B4, B5 and so on. With none out, B1 leads off and gets a base hit. B4 comes to bat, forcing B1 out at 2nd, while B4 is safe at 1st. The defence now lodge a legal appeal, stating B4 has batted out-of-order.
- RULING: The appeal is made in time, so B2, who should have batted, is declared 'out'. The Umpire would also allow the 'out' of B1 at 2nd to stand, resulting in 2 out on the play. B4, the incorrect batter is removed from 1st and the next batter will be B3, followed by B4.
Rule 5.4.1 Effects b) i. to iii.
- Case 6 The batting order is B1, B2, B3, B4, B5 and so on. With none out, B3 leads off and gets a base hit. B1 comes to bat and is retired at 1st, but not before B3 advances safely to 2nd. The defence now lodge a legal appeal, stating B1 has batted out-of-order.
- RULING: The appeal is made in time, so B4, who should have batted is out. As the defence also retired B1, the incorrect batter, on the play, this 'out' is allowed to stand, resulting in 2 outs on the play. The advance of B3 is nullified, so he must return to 1st. The next batter will be B5, as he is the batter following the batter called out on the batting out-of-order appeal.
Rule 5.4.1 Effects b) i. to iii.
- Case 7 No one out. B3 was due to bat but B4 comes to bat and flies out to F3. The team on defence appeals that B4 batted out of order and that B3 was the correct batter. The Umpire agrees and calls B3 out for batting out of order. Now B4 is the next scheduled batter. Does B4 bat again?
- RULING: No, since B4 was out on the play. B5 is the next correct batter and B4 does not bat again until all other batters have batted.
Rule 5.4.1 Effects b) i. iii. & iv.

- Case 8 The batting order is B1, B2, B3, B4, B5 and so on. With none out, B1 leads off and gets a base hit. B3 hits into a double play, retiring both B1 and B3. The defence now lodge a legal appeal, stating B3 has batted out-of-order.
- RULING: The appeal has been made in time, so B2, who should have batted, is declared 'out'. As B1 and B3 were both retired on the play, the defence is entitled to retain the outs, resulting in a triple play and side away. Although it is B3 who would normally bat next (following the batter declared out on the batting out-of-order appeal) B4 becomes the first batter in the next inning, as B3 was retired in the previous inning. Rule 5.4.1 Effects b) i. ii. & v.
- Case 9 The batting order is B1, B2, B3 and B4. B3 bats in place of B1 and the infraction is not detected until after a pitch to B4. Should B2 or B4 be the correct batter?
- RULING: B4, since his name follows that of B3, the incorrect batter. Neither B1 nor B2 may legally bat until their turn comes around again. Rule 5.4.1 Effects c)
- Case 10 R1 on 1st with none out. B3 bats out of order in place of B2 and hits into a fielder's choice, causing R1 to be forced out at 2nd. The defence properly appeal for batting out-of-order.
- RULING: This results in 2 outs being recorded. B2, who should have batted, is out, and R1 is out on the force. B3 is removed from 1st and becomes the next batter. Rule 5.4.1 Effects b) i. & ii. & d)
- Case 11 The DP is batting 9th in the line-up and singles to LF. The FLEX bats next and hits a double. With the DP on 3rd base and the FLEX at 2nd base, Batter number 1 bats next and singles scoring both the DP and the FLEX. Before a pitch has been thrown to Batter #2, the defensive coach appeals to the plate umpire that the DP and FLEX played illegally on offense and the run should be disallowed.
- Ruling: The DP batted legally. After a pitch to Batter 1 batting in the number 2 spot, the FLEX players turn at bat is legal. Rule 5.4.1 and Effect c) i. Batter 1 has left the game once the FLEX player batted in the number 1 spot. Rule 3.2.8 effect g). The FLEX player batting for anyone other than the DP is an illegal re-entry. Batter 1 batting in the number 2 spot was an illegal re-entry. Rule 3.1.9 a). The FLEX player and Batter 1 along with the Head Coach are ejected from the game. Rule 3.2.8 effect illegal re-entry a) effect b). As the infraction was detected prior to a pitch to Batter 2, Batter 1's hit is nullified and called out. Rule 3.2.8 effect d) iii and the runners returned to 3B and 2B. Batter 2 has left the game once Batter 1 batted in the number 2 spot. Rule 3.2.8 effect g). Batter 2 may be re-entered or substituted, and a proper substitute must be entered for the FLEX and Batter 1. The substitute for the FLEX cannot be placed on 2B as the FLEX and DP cannot be on offense at the same time and the FLEX can never play offence for anyone other than the DP, so they lose the right to place a substitute on base. Batter 3 is the next batter. The substitute for Batter 1 is placed at 2nd base. Rule 3.2.4 c); 3.1.8 b); 5.4.1 and Effect. ALSO SEE. Rule 3.2.8 Case 11 for multiple illegal re-entries. Note: This is the very reason to use preventive umpiring, both at home plate (counting the players on the line-up sheet and make sure that ten players are listed if the DP is being used), or when substitutions occur, inform the manager if a person can or cannot be substituted in the batting order, to prevent the wrong person from batting or batting out-of-order.

- Case 12 R1 on 1st with none out. B3 bats out of order in place of B2 and hits into a fielder's choice, causing R1 to be forced out at 2nd. B4 now comes to bat and faces 2 pitches. The defence now appeal, stating that B3 batted out-of-order.
- RULING: The appeal cannot be upheld, as it has been made after a pitch to the next batter (B4). All plays made as a result of B3's turn at bat is legal, and the game continues with B4 in the batter's box.
Rule 5.4.1 effect c)
- Case 13 B4 (Smith) bats out of order in place of B1 (Wilson) and hits a triple with none out. No appeal is made. B2 (Brown) bats and strikes out before B3 (Jones) walks. As B4 (Smith) is on base, does B5 (Edwards) become the next batter?
- RULING: Yes. Although Smith should be the next batter (following Jones in the line-up) he cannot be removed from 3rd. He simply misses a turn at bat and there is no penalty.
Rule 5.4.1 effect d)
- Case 14 R2 on 2nd with two out. B4 hits a fly ball, which F6 should catch with little effort. R2, advancing to 3rd, collides with F6, who still manages to complete the catch. Who is the first batter in the next inning?
- RULING: Interference is ruled against R2 and he becomes the third out. The fact that F6 caught the ball is ignored and B4 is awarded 1st. Therefore, as B4 has completed his turn at bat, B5 will be the first batter in the next inning.
Rule 5.4.1 b)
- Case 15 Roberts on 1st with two out and Williams at bat with a 2-strike count. Roberts steals on the next pitch (called a ball) and is put out sliding into 2nd. When the team comes to bat in the next inning, Williams enters the batter's box and the defence claims he should resume with a count of 1 ball 2 strikes, (the count when Roberts was retired).
- RULING: The defence is incorrect. Although Williams becomes the leadoff batter (he did not complete his turn at bat in the previous inning), he does so with the previous count cancelled.
Rule 5.4.1 c)

5.4.2 BATTING REQUIREMENTS

- Case 1 At the commencement of a new inning B3, the leadoff batter, is in the on-deck circle. The Umpire requests B3 to enter the box by calling "Batter". B3 remains in the on-deck circle for a further 11 seconds while taking the signal from the coach.
- RULING: Any call by the Umpire requesting the batter to enter the batter's box is the same as calling "Play Ball". As B3 did not enter the batter's box within 10 seconds of the call, the Umpire should rule the ball dead and call a strike, even though a pitch has not been thrown.
Rule 5.4.2 b) Effect; 5.4.3 d) v.
- Case 2 After F1 has completed his warm-up pitches at the top of the first inning, the Umpire signals the leadoff batter (B1) to the batter's box. Before he takes his position B1 erases the front lines of the batter's box with his feet. Should this be permitted?
- RULING: No! No member of the offensive team may deliberately erase the lines of the batter's box with the intention of making the umpire's job in determining whether a batter bats illegally more difficult. A strike should be called on B1, even though no pitch has been thrown.
Rule 5.4.2 c) Effect; 5.4.3 d) vi. 1

- Case 3 At the pre-game manager's meeting at the home plate, the umpire notices that the coach of the visiting team is erasing the lines of the batter's box while he is inspecting the line-up card. What action should the umpire take?
- RULING: It is illegal for any member of the offensive team, including the coach at the pre-game meeting, to deliberately erase the lines of the batter's box. The umpire should declare a strike on the leadoff batter, even though the game has not yet started.
Rule 5.4.2 c) Effect; 5.4.3 d) vi. 2
- Case 4 The batter is standing with part of his foot on the line and part outside the line prior to the start of the pitch. Is this legal?
- RULING: No, this is not a legal batting position. Even though the lines of the batter's box are considered inside the box, the batter cannot start with any part of the foot outside the line before the pitcher delivers the ball.
Rule 5.4.2 d)
Note: The umpire should use preventative measures if the batter's position is noticed prior to the pitch. Call time and ensure the batter is within the lines of the box prior to the pitch.
- Case 5 B1 enters the batter's box and assumes his stance with (a) his back foot right on top of the back line of the box but with no part of his foot out of the box, or (b) part of his foot out of the box.
- RULING: In (a) it is legal. In (b) it is not legal. Rule 5.4.2 d)
- Case 6 F1 takes his position on the plate while B1 starts with his back foot on the back line of the batter's box. B1 shuffles both feet until his back foot is completely out of the box (a) before F1 begins his motion, or (b) after the pitched ball was on the way.
- RULING: In (a) the umpire can hold up play and put B1 back in the box if the pitch has not started. In (b) there is no penalty if B1 steps back after the pitch begins. However, if he hits the ball with his entire foot completely out of the batter's box and touching the ground, he should be called out.
Rule 5.4.2 d); 5.4.4 b) iv
- Case 7 B1 enters the batter's box and takes the first pitch for a called strike. He then steps out of the batter's box, takes two steps toward third base, and takes a practice swing before returning to the box, effectively delaying the game as the pitcher was waiting to pitch.
- RULING: It is illegal for B1 to leave the box between pitches on a called strike. The Umpire should declare a dead ball and call an additional strike without the requirement for a pitch to be thrown.
Rule 5.4.2 e) & Effect; 5.4.3 d) vii.
- Case 8 B1 takes a called strike one. He steps out of the batter's box with both feet and walks towards the coach to take a signal. F1 has the ball in the pitcher's circle and F2 is ready. The Umpire calls time and awards an additional strike against B1.
- RULING: This is the correct action by the Umpire. By stepping out of the batter's box on a called strike B1 has delayed the game.
Rule 5.4.2 e) & Effect; 5.4.3 d) vii.
- Case 9 B1 takes a called strike one. He steps out of the batter's box with both feet, but steps right back in before F2 has returned the ball to F1. The defensive team coach asks the Umpire to call a strike on B1.
- RULING: The Umpire should refuse the request because B1 did not delay the game.
Rule 5.4.2 e) & Effect; 5.4.3 d) vii.

Case 10 B1 enters the batter's box and takes the first pitch for a called strike. He then steps out of the batter's box; however, he does not leave the batter's box area and takes a practice swing. He then returns to the box before F1 is ready to pitch.

RULING: Although it is illegal for B1 to leave the box between pitches on a called strike, as long as he does not delay play there is no penalty. The Umpire should ensure a batter does not delay play by continually leaving the box.

Rule 5.4.2 e) & Effect; 5.4.3 d) vii.

Case 11 B1 hits a foul ball, so steps out of the batter's box to take a signal while waiting for F1 to receive a new ball. The defensive team now want an additional strike called on B1 for stepping out of the batter's box.

RULING: The request is denied, as it is acceptable for B1 to leave the batter's box after hitting a foul ball.

Rule 5.4.2 e) i.

Case 12 There are no runners on base as B2 swings lustily at a pitch. He misses the ball, but the momentum of the swing takes him out of the batter's box. At this point the defensive team coach requests the umpire to call an additional strike on B1 for leaving the box.

RULING: In this case B2 has not voluntarily left the batter's box, nor is he delaying the game, so the request should be denied.

Rule 5.4.2 e) ii; 5.4.3 d) vii.

Case 13 B3 has a Ball 3 Strike 1 count when F1 delivers the next pitch. B3, thinking the pitch is Ball 4, leaves the batter's box and heads off toward 1st. However, the Umpire calls the pitch "Strike 2", so B3 must return to the batter's box. The defensive team insist that, as B3 left the batter's box without hitting the ball, he should now be out on 3 strikes. Is the defence correct?

RULING: No! As B1 thought the pitch was Ball 4, he may legally leave the batter's box without penalty, even though the pitch was a called strike. B1 resumes batting with a full count.

Rule 5.4.2 e) viii.

5.4.3 BALLS AND STRIKES

Case 1 B3 has already scored 3 safe hits in the game. In an attempt to prevent him from hitting the ball, F1 legally pitches the ball very slowly and with a perceptible arc. B3 does not swing at the pitch as it drops through the strike zone. F2 gloves the ball after it has landed on home plate.

RULING: This is a ball. Provided B3 does not swing at the pitch, any pitched ball that hits the home plate, irrespective of whether it passes through the strike zone or not, is a ball.

Rule 5.4.3 a) i.

Case 2 A legally pitched ball is not swung at and passes through the strike zone before it touches the ground. Is it necessary for the entire ball to pass through the batter's strike zone to be called a strike?

RULING: No. It is a strike when any part of the ball, on a legal pitch, enters the strike zone, provided the top of the ball is at or below the Sternum and the bottom of the ball is at or above the bottom of the knee cap.

Rule 5.4.3 c) i; 5.1.41

- Case 3 A pitched ball bounces in front of home plate. B1 swings at the ball and (a) misses the ball, or (b) hits the ball. What is the call?
- RULING: The ball is alive. In (a) it is a strike. In (b) the resulting hit and subsequent play is the outcome of the pitch.
Rule 5.4.3 c) ii.
- Case 4 The pitcher delivers a change up and the batter swings and misses, but has time to reset and swing again, making contact the second time with the ball going fair or foul.
- RULING: A strike is called on the first swing and miss. If this is the third strike the batter is out. On the second swing the ball is dead regardless of whether or not contact occurs. Runners return to the base last touched at the time of the pitch.
Rule 5.4.3 c) ii)
- Case 5 There are two strikes on the batter. The next pitch is swung at by the batter who misses the pitch. However, on the back swing, the ball accidentally hits the bat and rolls fair or foul.
- Ruling: A strike is called on the swing and miss. As this is the third strike the batter is out. On the contact with the ball on the follow through or back swing, following the swing, the ball is dead. Runners are returned to the last base touched at the time of the pitch.
Rule 5.4.3 c) ii.
- Case 6 B1 swings at and misses the first pitch. The ball hits him on the leg.
- RULING: It is a strike. The ball is dead and there is no base award.
Rule 5.4.3 d) ii
- Case 7 B1 at bat with a 1-ball count, when he squares around to bunt. The pitch strikes the bat and pops up into the air down the 1st base foul line. The ball falls untouched in foul territory, where it settles.
- RULING: This is a foul ball and as the original count was less than 2 strikes, the pitch is classed as a strike.
Rule 5.4.3 d) iii

5.4.4 BATTER IS OUT

- Case 1 B5 swings at, and misses, the third strike. The ball tips F2's glove, hits his chest and is then caught in his glove. Is a throw or tag required to get an out?
- RULING: No. The third strike has been legally caught.
Rule 5.4.4 a) i.
- Case 2 With R1 on 1st and one out, B3 has a 2-strike count. R1 steals to 2nd as B3 swings at, and misses, the next pitch. F2 drops the ball, so B3 runs to 1st. His theory is that, because R1 stole 2nd, 1st base is not occupied. Is he correct?
- RULING: No. This situation is judged from the time of the pitch. B3 is out (less than 2 out with 1st occupied) and the ball is alive, leaving R1 safe at 2nd.
Rule 5.4.4 a) ii.

- Case 3 With one out R1, who is running with the pitch, steals 2B. The catcher drops the third strike and B2 runs to 1B. The catcher throws the ball into right field.
- RULING: The batter is out on the dropped third strike rule. First base is occupied with less than two outs. The runner is not out and if they beat the throw to 2B they would be safe. The ball remains live when overthrown into RF, and runners can run at their own risk.
- NOTE: The Plate Umpire needs to exercise good game management skills on this play by calling the batter out promptly after the catcher drops the third strike. This will assist both the offence and defence.
- Rule 5.4.4 a) ii.
- Case 4 With a 2-2 count on B4, F1 delivers the next pitch, which is high inside. B4 swings at the pitch but it hits his hands, resulting in the ball rolling into fair territory.
- RULING: The hands are not considered part of the bat but since B4 attempted to hit the pitch, the pitch is ruled a strike. The ball is dead and B4 is out on 3 strikes.
- Rule 5.4.4 b) i; 5.4.3 d) i. & ii.
- Case 5 B1 uses a rubber cone grip attachment on an aluminium bat. He says that it helps improve his grip on the bat. The defensive team appeals that the bat is illegal, after B1 enters the batter's box. What does the Umpire rule?
- RULING: B1 is out and ejected for using an altered bat. This is not considered an appeal by the defence, but rather a notification. Even though the defence said illegal bat, the Umpire must impose the correct interpretation and ruling.
- Rule 5.4.4 b) iii; 2.3.1; 2.1.1
- Case 6 B1 hits the ball with an altered bat and reaches 1st. B2 comes to bat and is detected, a) while in the batter's box, and b) after one pitch, with the same bat. It is then realised that B1 also used the same bat.
- RULING: In a) and b) B2 is called out and ejected from the game for entering the box with an altered bat. The ball is dead. The bat should be removed from the game.
- Rule 5.4.4 b) iii
- Note: When the batter steps into the box with the altered bat this is considered a play and they are called out and ejected. In this case we do not call the Batter-runner out. As the batter enters the box in a) a play has been made similar to a pitch to the next batter b). If the catcher or umpire noticed it on the ground, prior to the batter entering the box, then the batter Runner would be out and ejected.
- Rule 5.4.4 b) iii; 2.3.1; 2.1.1
- Case 7 R1 on 1B. B2 hits a ground ball with a 35-inch bat. R1 is out at 2B, but B2 is safe at 1B. The umpire notices the "illegal" bat.
- RULING: B2 is ruled out for the "illegal" bat and the ball is declared "dead". As the ball is dead, the out at 2B of R1 is nullified and R1 returned to 1B.
- Rule 5.4.4 b) iii; 5.1.23 c)
- Case 8 B1 enters the batter's box with a bat that has no safety tape on the handle.
- RULING: The ball is dead and B1 is out for entering the box with an illegal bat. Remember, it is the duty of the Umpires to check the bats before the game. By doing so, these situations may be prevented. The bat should be removed from the game.
- Rule 5.4.4 b) iii; Appendix-2 A b) ii. 9.

- Case 9 B2 steps on home plate and then hits the ball toward F6.
- RULING: This action is considered to be an illegal hit, resulting in the batter being called out and the ball becoming dead.
Rule 5.4.4 b) iv; 5.1.23 b)
- Case 10 B2, with one foot completely out of the batter's box and on the ground, hits (a) a fair ball or, (b) a foul ball.
- RULING: In both cases, it is an illegally batted ball and B2 is out. To be called out, B2's foot must be completely out of the box and in contact with the ground outside the lines of the batter's box at the time of contact with the ball. If his foot is in mid-air at the time of contact, it is not considered to be out of the box.
Rule 5.4.4 b) iv; 5.1.23 a)
- Case 11 B1 begins his turn at bat at the back of the batter's box, but with both feet legally inside the box. As F1 begins the pitching motion, B1 steps back toward F2, resulting in one of his feet being out of the batter's box. As the pitch is delivered, he runs toward F1 and (a) swings at and makes contact with the ball, or (b) swings at and misses the pitch. At the time of contacting the ball, both feet were back in the batter's box.
- RULING: In (a) B1 is out and the ball is dead, regardless of whether he hits the ball fair or foul, as he is not permitted to leave the box to gain a running start before hitting the ball. In (b) a strike is called on the swing, the ball remains alive and B1 is not out unless it is the third strike.
Rule 5.4.4 b) v; 5.1.23 d)
- Case 12 B3 wishes to move from one batter's box to the other, while F1 is in contact with the pitcher's plate.
- RULING: B3 must request and be granted "Time" by the umpire before he can change to the other box. B3 would be 'out' if he does not request "Time" and steps in front of F2 to the other box while F1 is on the pitcher's plate and appearing to be taking a signal.
Rule 5.4.4 b) vi.
- Case 13 B1 has a 2-strike count. While F1 is off the pitcher's plate, B1 steps across home plate to the opposite batter's box. Is there a penalty for this action?
- RULING: No. It is only when F1 is taking the signal from F2, or any time thereafter that B1 may not step across the plate in front of F2 to the other batter's box.
Rule 5.4.4 b) vi
- Case 14 B1 bunts the ball into fair territory near the 1st base line. While running to 1st, he drops the bat and deflects the stationary ball away from F3.
- RULING: B1 is out for hitting the ball a 2nd time. In this case, a moving bat has hit a stationary ball. When the bat is moving, it is to be deemed as still in B1's control.
Rule 5.4.4 b) vii. 2.
- Case 15 B1 bunts the ball. It hits the ground, bounces up quickly, and then hits the bat (still in his hands) a 2nd time while he is still in the batter's box. The ball is over fair territory.
- RULING: B1 is not out for hitting the ball a 2nd time. It is a foul ball.
Rule 5.4.4 b) vii. 1.

- Case 16 B1 mishits a pitched ball on the ground in the direction of the on-deck circle and drops his bat in the direction of the almost motionless ball. The bat makes contact with the ball, in foul territory, causing the ball to rebound and roll fair.
- RULING: This would be a Foul Ball and the ball is dead. B1 is not out for hitting the ball a second time, because contact occurred in foul territory. Rule 5.4.4 b) vii. 2.
- Case 17 B1 bunts the ball toward F1. He drops his bat in fair territory in front of home plate and starts to run to 1st. The ball lands, spins back, hits the stationary bat, and is then fielded by F2 but not before B1 reaches 1st.
- RULING: B1 is not out for hitting the ball a 2nd time. In this case, a moving ball has hit a stationary bat in fair territory. A stationary bat is considered as part of the ground. As the ball was first touched in fair territory, the ball remains alive and play continues. Rule 5.4.4 b) vii. 2.
- Case 18 The batter swings and hits a ground ball to F5. (a) the batter drops the bat and then the ball rolls against the bat (b) F5 fielding the ball steps on the bat (c) the bat breaks and a portion hits the ball or any infielder.
- RULING (a) the ball is in play and shall be ruled fair or foul depending on where it comes to rest or is first touched by a fielder. [5.4.4 b) vii 2]
 NOTE: Conversely if the bat hits the ball. Interference is ruled.
 (b) it is not considered interference and the play just continues. It is a legal play to drop the bat and then it just becomes part of the ground. [2.1.12]
 (c) a broken bat is not the result of an action of the batter, so the batter has not committed interference. The batter is NOT out, and the play just continues.
 NOTE: If in (a) and (b) the bat is not dropped but THROWN and in the opinion of the umpire it was to interfere with the ball or the fielder. Interference shall be ruled.
 Rule 5.4.4 b) vii. 2.
- Case 19 R1, on 1st, attempts to steal on the pitch. B2 steps across home plate after the ball is caught by F2, who hesitates in throwing the ball because B2 is in the way.
- RULING: The act of B2 stepping out of the box and hindering F2's attempt to throw creates interference. B2 is out and R1 must return to 1st.
 Rule 5.4.4 c) i.
- Case 20 R1, on 1st, steals on the pitch. F2 comes up throwing in an attempt to pick him off at 2nd but the throw contacts B3's bat and ricochets into foul territory. The contact is accidental and not intentional on the part of either B3, who is still in the batter's box, or F2. Is there any penalty on this play?
- RULING: No. B3 may not interfere with a throw from F2 by stepping out of the box or interfere intentionally while in the box. In this case, he was in the box and the contact was not intentional, so there is no interference. B2 is not out and R1 is safe at 2nd.
 Rule 5.4.4 c) i. & ii.
- Case 21 R1 is on 1st when F1 delivers a pitch to B2. B2 allows the pitch to pass through to F2 as R1 attempts to steal. After the ball reaches F2, B2 then swings the bat across home plate as F2 attempts to throw to F4. No contact is made between the bat and F2, or the thrown ball, and R1 reaches 2nd base safely. Should the action of B2 swinging after the ball has reached F2 be considered as interference?
- RULING: Yes. This would be considered as intentionally hindering F2 while within the batter's box. B1 may only legally swing at a pitched ball as it is travelling toward F2. It is not a normal action for B2 to swing after the ball has reached F2 so, by doing so, the only intent by B2 in this instance is an attempt to impede F2 in throwing to F4.
 Rule 5.4.4 c) ii.

- Case 22 None out with R1 on 2nd. F1 pitches, R1 starts for 3rd and F2 comes up throwing. B2 steps out of the batter's box as F2 throws the ball and it ricochets off B2's helmet. R1 (a) safely reaches 3rd because the ball went out of play, or (b) despite the contact, is thrown out at 3rd.
- RULING: B2 is out for interference in both (a) and (b). The ball is dead immediately the interference occurs, so R1 returns to 2nd. B2 may not interfere by stepping out of the batter's box (it does not matter if it is accidental). The fact that the ball went out of play has no direct bearing in this case.
Rule 5.4.4 c) i.
- Case 23 B7, in attempting to swing at a pitch, steps back toward F2, resulting in one foot being completely out of the batter's box. While his foot is out of the box, there is contact between the bat and F2's glove during the attempted swing.
- RULING: B7 is out, as this is interference, and the ball is dead. B7 shall not hinder F2 from catching or throwing the ball, by stepping out of the batter's box, or intentionally hinder while in the box. F2 is not responsible for the contact, so he should not be penalised. Rule 5.4.4 c) i.
- Case 24 R1 is on 3rd. On the next pitched ball, F2 cocks his arm in an attempt to pick R1 off at 3rd but finds he cannot make the throw because (a) B2 remained in the batter's box, or (b) B2 stepped out of the batter's box.
- RULING: In (a) there is no interference, unless B2 intentionally interfered. In (b), if B2 stepped into the throw, then interference would be automatic, with the ball becoming dead, B2 would be out and R1 would be returned to 3rd.
Rule 5.4.4 c) i. & ii.
- Case 25 R1 on 1st, when F2 drops a pitch and the ball rolls to B2's feet. Forgetting R1 on 1st, B2 picks up the ball and hands it to F2. R1 (a) attempts to steal to 2nd, or (b) does not even try to get off 1st.
- RULING: In (a) it is interference, and the ball is dead. B2 is out and R1 returns to 1st. In (b) there is no penalty. However, B2 should be advised not to handle a live ball.
Rule 5.4.4 c) ii.
- Case 26 There is a runner on 3rd. The next pitched ball is a wild pitch and gets by the catcher. R3 breaks for home. The catcher retrieves the ball and throws it to an infielder who is covering home plate. The infielder has a play on R3. The thrown ball makes contact with the batter who is standing in the batter's box or out of the batter's box.
- RULING: The ball is dead "Dead Ball", and the batter is "Out" for "Interference". R3 returns to 3rd.
- The batter's box is not a sanctuary for the batter. The batter must be aware of the situation after every pitched ball, especially when a runner is trying to score.
Note: It is not automatic interference when the ball makes contact with a batter while the batter is still in the batter's box. Crucial details an umpire must judge in determining interference are (a) is the throw an accurate one and not grossly offline, as well as (b) is there a potential play for an out. Rule 5.4.4 c) iii.
- Case 27 R1, on 3rd, attempts to score on a passed ball. F2 recovers the ball and throws to F3, who is moving in to cover home plate. On seeing that F3 will be able to tag out R1 quite comfortably, B2, still in the batter's box, steps across the plate and bumps into F3, causing him to miss the throw. R1 now slides safely across the plate.
- RULING: B2, by not moving out of the batter's box, has interfered with F3's play at the plate, so B2 should be called out on the interference. As this interference was an intentional attempt to prevent the out on R1, R1 should also be declared out.
Rule 5.4.4 c) iii.

- Case 28 R1 on 1st attempts to steal on a pitch. The pitch gets away from F2 as R1 rounds 2nd. F2 recovers the ball near the backstop and on seeing R1 heading toward 3rd throws to F5. In the meantime, B2, who stepped out of the box while F2 recovered the ball, sticks his bat out and makes contact with the throw and deflects the ball toward F3 who is moving in to cover home plate.
- RULING: B2 has intentionally interfered with a thrown ball while out of the batter's box, so should be declared out immediately. As the ball is dead on interference, R1 would be returned to 2nd, that being the last base legally held at the time of the interference.
Rule 5.4.4 c) iv.
- Case 29 R1 on 2B. On a passed ball, R1 advances toward 3B. F2 retrieves the ball and throws to 3B. The ball strikes the batter in the batter's box.
- RULING: Since there was no intent on the part of the batter to interfere, no interference is ruled, and the ball remains live.
Rule 5.4.4 c) iv.
- 5.5 BATTER-RUNNER**
- 5.5.1 THE BATTER BECOMES THE BATTER-RUNNER**
- Case 1 R2 on 3rd with none out. B3 bunts the ball to F5 and R2 becomes caught in a rundown play between 3rd and home. B3, who is halfway to 1st, sees that R2 is trapped, so turns around and moves back toward home plate. R2 is then tagged, so B3 turns around again and runs safely to 1st.
- RULING: R2 is out for being tagged off base. B3 is safe at 1st and the ball remains alive. Rule 5.5.1 a); 5.5.2 b) xii; 5.10.3 a) ii.
- Case 2 None out and no runners on base. F1 pitches the ball and it hits the ground before reaching the plate. B1 swings and misses for strike 3 and F2 cleanly catches the ball. Is a tag or throw to 1st necessary for B1 to be out?
- RULING: Yes. This is considered a dropped third strike that has been trapped by F2.
Rule 5.5.1 b); 5.1.44
- Case 3 B1 has a 3-2 count. F1 delivers the next pitch low for Ball 4. B1 walks his bat to the bench area, and without going out of play, tosses the bat gently into the dugout. The defence appeals that B1 did not go directly to 1st and should be called 'out'.
- RULING: B1 is entitled to 1st. There is no time limit considered in the case of a batter being awarded a walk. He is entitled to first base, without liability to be put out.
Rule 5.5.1 c) i.
- Case 4 R1 on 3B, R2 on 2B, and R3 on 1B when the batter receives a fourth ball. R1 fails to touch home plate and goes to the dugout. Can R1 be declared out on an appeal?
- RULING: Yes, since the batter became a batter-runner on ball four, all bases must be touched, as home plate is not touched appeal on missed base is possible.
Rule 5.5.1 c) i; 5.9 a); 1.2.6 e) i

- Case 5 F1 prepares to deliver a pitch. B2 takes one more swing to set himself while F1 still has the ball. On B2's back swing, but before the ball is released by F1, the bat hits the tip of F2's mitt. Is F2 guilty of obstruction?
- RULING: If the Umpire realises F2 has obstructed B2 accidentally and feels there is an opportunity to stop the play before the pitch is released, then call "Time" or "np pitch". By taking this action you can effectively avoid a significant penalty for an inadvertent and inconsequential rule violation, as F2 has not hindered B2 in an attempt to hit a pitched ball.
- Rule 5.5.1 d)
Note: if the pitch has started is obstruction.
- Case 6 F2's glove contacts the bat of B1 as he swings at a pitch. B1 manages to hit the ball to F6, who fields and retires him at 1st.
- RULING: This is a form of obstruction, as the action of the glove contacting the bat has hindered B1 in his attempt to strike at a pitched ball.
The manager has the option of taking the result of the play or if the manager does not take the result of the play, the batter is awarded first base.
Rule 5.5.1 d) Effect; 5.1.32 a)
- Case 7 R3 on 2nd, when F2 obstructs B4 in his attempt to swing at a pitch. B4 makes contact and hits a fly ball to F9, who easily makes the catch. R3 advances to 3rd after legally tagging up. After "Time" is called, the coach of the offensive team requests that he be given the option of putting B4 on 1st, with R3 returning to 2nd.
- RULING: The Umpire should agree to the request. However, if B4 had reached 1st safely and R3 had advanced, the obstruction by F2 would be ignored and no option given.
Rule 5.5.1 d) effect 4; 5.1.34 a)
- Case 8 R1 on 2nd and R2 on 1st, when F2 obstructs B3 in his attempt to swing at a pitch. B3 is able to make contact with the ball and singles to left field. All runners advance 1 base but R1 rounds 3rd and is put out trying to return to the base.
- RULING: B3 became a batter-runner as soon as he hit the ball. Since both he and all runners advanced at least 1 base, they are in jeopardy. No option is given on this play and R1 is out.
Rule 5.5.1 d) Effect 3; 5.1.34 a)
- Case 9 The batter tips the catcher's mitt on their back swing (a) prior to the pitcher starting the pitch, or (b) after the pitch has started.
- RULING: (a) the Plate Umpire should give the "dead ball" signal indicating no pitch and allow the batter and catcher to get set again before declaring "play ball." Rule 4.5 a) ii.
(b) this is catcher obstruction, whether the batter is on the back swing or forward swing.
Rule 5.5.1 d) Effects
- Case 10 A batted ball by B4 strikes an umpire, who is standing on fair territory behind F4. No other fielder could make a play on the ball.
- RULING: B4 becomes a batter-runner, and the ball remains alive, as it has passed a fielder.
Rule 5.5.1 e) Effect 2; 5.1.16 d)

- Case 11 R1 on 2nd with one out, when B3 hits a high fly ball to the infield. F6 and F4 both move in for the play but misjudge the ball and it falls, untouched, to the ground behind them. It then strikes R1, who is off the base. No other fielder could make an out on the play.
- RULING: B3 becomes a batter-runner, and the ball remains alive.
Rule 5.5.1 e) Effect 2
- Case 12 B1 leans into, or tries to get hit by a pitched ball, and is struck by the ball.
- RULING: The ball is dead and B1 is not awarded 1st. He is awarded a ball unless the ball is in the strike zone. The rule protects a batter who attempts to avoid being hit by the pitch, not a batter who attempts to be hit by the pitch.
Rule 5.5.1 f); 5.10.5 a) i. 5
- Case 13 B1 attempts to avoid a pitch that is not in the strike zone. He is unsuccessful and the ball hits his hand while it is still on the bat.
- RULING: B1 is awarded 1st. "Pitched ball, not struck at or called a strike, touches batter... batter's hands are not part of the bat..."
Rule 5.5.1 f)
- Case 14 B1 attempts to avoid being hit by a pitched ball but inadvertently moves into the pitch he is trying to avoid and is hit by the ball.
- RULING: B1 is awarded 1st for being hit by a pitched ball and the ball is dead.
Rule 5.5.1 f)
- Case 15 B1 hits a fly ball that (a) touches F8's glove above the fence level, then hits the top of the fence and goes over, or (b) touches F8's glove below the fence level, then hits top of the fence and goes over.
- RULING: B1 becomes a batter-runner and it is a home run in both instances.
Rule 5.5.1 g) ii.
- Case 16 B1 hits a long fly ball that F8 attempts to catch. He only manages to get his glove to the ball, which deflects off the glove, onto his body, and then over the fence.
- RULING: This is a home run.
Rule 5.5.1 g) ii.
- Case 17 R2 on 2nd, when B3 hits a long fly ball that hits the foul pole above the fence level and rebounds back into the outfield.
- RULING: R2 is entitled to advance home without liability, as the ball is dead when it hits the foul pole above the fence level on the fly. Rule 5.5.1 g) iii.
- Case 18 F8 leaps over a small fence in the outfield and is completely outside the playing field and before getting back with both feet into playable territory, reaches up and catches a fly ball. In the Umpire's judgement he deems (a) that the ball would have cleared the fence in fair territory had it not been touched, or (b) that the ball would not have cleared the fence in fair territory.
- RULING: In a) the Umpire should award a home run. In b) the umpire should award 2 bases from the time of the pitch.
Rule 5.5.1 g) iv; 5.5.1 h) iv; 5.1.9 c)

Case 19 R1 on 1st. B2 hits a long, fair fly ball close to the left field foul line. F7 comes across and gets his glove to it over fair territory. However, he only succeeds in deflecting the ball over the fence in foul territory.

RULING: B2 is awarded 2nd and R1 is awarded 3rd. (Two bases from the time of the pitch, as the ball went over the fence in foul territory).

Rule 5.5.1 h) ii; 5.10.5 Effect b) i. 2

5.5.2 THE BATTER-RUNNER IS OUT

Case 1 B1 hits a fly ball that both F3 and F4 attempt to catch. The ball strikes F4 on the head and F3 catches the rebounding ball before it strikes the ground.

RULING: B1 is out. This is a legally caught fly ball, as the ball has touched nothing other than defensive players.

Rule 5.5.2 a) ii.

Case 2 B1 hits a fly ball to F8. The ball touches F8's glove, rebounds, hits the outfield fence and deflects back into the glove. The ball never touches the ground.

RULING: This is not a legal catch, as it touched another object (other than a defensive fielder). B1 is not out.

Rule 5.5.2 a) ii; 5.1.9 e)

Case 3 B1 hits a hard line drive toward F3, who knocks the ball down. He recovers the ball and has it in his right hand while lying on the ground. He then reaches out and touches 1st, with his bare left hand, before B1 reaches the base.

RULING: B1 is out, as the base has been touched by a fielder in possession of the ball, prior to B1 reaching the base.

Rule 5.5.2.a) iii; 5.1.42 b)

Case 4 B1 hits a ground ball wide of F3, who snares it, but the force of the hit entangles the ball in the glove webbing. To save time, he tosses the glove and the ball to F1 covering 1st. F1 touches the base ahead of B1. Is B1 out?

RULING: Yes, provided F1 has control of the glove and ball. F3 fielded the ball legally and the action of tossing the glove violated no rule. Rule 5.5.2 a) iii.

Case 5 B1 hits a ground ball to F1, who hesitates in throwing to 1st. B1, assuming that he is an easy out, enters his team area (bench, dugout, etc). F1 finally throws to 1st but the ball is not caught by F3 and it deflects into the outfield. B1 then leaves his team area and runs to 1st.

RULING: By failing to advance directly to 1st after hitting the ball, B1 is out as soon as he enters the team area.

Rule 5.5.2 a) iv. 1.

- Case 6 With the score tied in the bottom of the 7th, bases loaded and 2 out, B1 draws a walk.
(a) He fails to go to 1st but instead enters his team area, although all other runners advance one base, or (b) the runner from 1st does not advance to 2nd but instead walks off the field, although all other runners and B1 advance one base. Are these appeal plays, or should the umpire call the infraction when he sees them?
- RULING: It is not an appeal play in either case. When a walk is issued, all runners, including B1, must touch all awarded bases.
In (a) the umpire should declare B1 out as soon as he enters his team area; because the out occurred before B1 touched 1st, it results in a force-out. Since the third out of the inning is the result of a force-out, no run can score on the play.
Rule 5.5.2 a) iv. 2.
In (b) the umpire should declare the runner from 1st out immediately when he leaves the field of play or enters his team area. This is also a force-out and no runs will score.
Rule 5.10.3 a) xi; 1.2.5 c) ii.
- Case 7 Bases loaded with none out. B4 hits a high fly ball in the infield toward F4, who is in a position to easily catch the ball.
- RULING: This is an Infield Fly. B4 is out and runners may advance at their own risk.
Rule 5.5.2.a) v; 5.1.26.
- Case 8 R1 on 2nd and R2 on 1st with none out when B3 hits a pop fly over the infield near F5. F5 loses sight of the ball in the sun and the ball lands in foul territory. Without being touched it then spins into fair territory between home plate and 3rd. F5 picks up the ball and throws to F4, covering 2nd, who then touches R2 with the ball while R2 is off the base.
- RULING: The Plate Umpire should call and signal "Infield Fly, If Fair the Batter Is Out". B3 is automatically 'out' because the batted ball ended up being a fair ball. R2 is also 'out' because the ball remains alive on an Infield Fly. Rule 5.5.2.a) v; 5.1.26.
- Case 9 With runners on 1st and 2nd and none out, the next hitter (B3) is faking a bunt but at the last moment draws back and swings away. He hits a fly ball (approximately 3 metres (10 feet) off the ground) toward F5. The Umpire calls "Infield Fly". Is the umpire correct in doing so?
- RULING: Yes. There is nothing in the rules defining how high an Infield Fly must go. Since this is neither a line drive nor an attempted bunt, the Umpire is correct in calling it an Infield Fly, if he feels it could be caught by an infielder with ordinary effort. B3 is out.
Rule 5.5.2.a) v; 5.1.26; 5.1.8.
- Case 10 With R1 on 3rd, R2 on 2nd, R3 on 1st and none out, B4 lofts a high fly ball toward F4. As F4 drifts out under the ball the umpire calls "Infield Fly, the batter Is Out". F8, who is playing shallow, races in and tries to make a catch over his teammate's shoulder. However, he drops the ball, retrieves it and overthrows (not blocked) at 1st. When the play ends, two runs have scored, R3 is on 3rd and B4 is on 2nd. What is the call?
- RULING: Even though an outfielder handled the ball, it remains an Infield Fly, so B4 is automatically out and removed from 2nd. However, since the ball remains alive on an Infield Fly, the advance of the runners is legal. Rule 5.5.2 a) v; 5.1.26.
- Case 11 R1 on 2nd and R2 on 1st with none out, when B3 hits a fly ball to F3. The Umpire calls "Infield Fly, The Batter Is Out" as R2 collides with F3 prior to the catch. The ball is not touched and rolls into foul territory where it settles.
- RULING: This is a double play. B3 is out on the Infield Fly and R2 is out on the interference with F3. The ball is dead on the interference, so R1 must remain at 2nd.
Rule 5.5.2 a) v; 5.10.3 c) iii; 5.1.26.

- Case 12 R1 is on 2B and R2 on 1B one out, F3 is fielding deep when B4 hits a high fly ball near the 1B foul line. The umpire calls "Infield Fly if fair", however F3 in fair territory while moving in to catch the ball is interfered by R2 holding up, the ball bounces on the ground, spins, and rolls foul without contact. Both R1 and R2 advance one base before F3 recovers the ball.
Ruling: Interference is ruled when F3 contacts R2 and the ball becomes dead immediately.
Rule 5.1.30
The ball is judged fair at the time of the interference,
Rule 5.1.16 h).
R1 is returned to 2B the last base held at the time of the interference. B4 is called out on the Infield fly.
Rule 5.1.26; 5.5.2 a) v; 5.1.30
- Case 13 R1 on 2nd and R2 on 1st with one out. B3 hits a high fly ball in the infield, during which the umpire calls "Infield Fly, The Batter Is Out". F6 intentionally drops the ball and on seeing this R1 attempts to advance. F6 then retrieves the ball and throws to F5, who tags R1 sliding into third.

RULING: An intentionally dropped ball cannot be called following an Infield Fly ruling. Even though the ball remains alive, runners do not have to advance. However, because he did attempt to advance, R1 is out on the tag. The inning is now over, as the Infield Fly was the second out.
Rule 5.5.2 a) v; 5.1.26; 5.1.29.
- Case 14 R1 on 2nd, R2 on 1st with one out, when B4 hits a fly ball that the Umpire calls "Infield Fly – Batter Out". Both runners believe there are 2 out and start to run as soon as the ball is hit. The infielders fail to catch the ball, which lands and stays fair, and both R1 and R2 score. If the defence appeals that R1 and R2 left their bases early, are they 'out' for leaving early?

RULING: B4 is 'out' on the Infield Fly rule, and the ball remains alive. This situation is dealt with the same way as any uncaught fly ball, and as such, both runs would still count, as the runners did not leave early.
Rule 5.5.2.a) v; 5.1.26; 5.10.3 a) vii.
- Case 15 B1 hits a ground ball to F6, who fields and throws to F3. B1 just beats the throw but touches only the fair portion of the double base. Is B1 safe or out?

RULING: B1 is out, provided the defence makes an appeal. Even though he beat the throw, he must touch the foul portion of the base on his first attempt at the base when a play is made at the base. This is the same as a runner missing a base and if the defence do not appeal before B1 returns to the base, he is safe. Rule 5.5.2.a) vi; 5.6 a) iii.
- Case 16 B4 bunts the ball just in front of home plate. He runs toward 1st in fair territory, heading toward the one metre (3 foot) running lane. While in fair territory and before reaching the one metre (3 foot) lane, he is hit in the back with the throw from F2.

RULING: This is not interference but incidental contact. Interference can only be ruled if the contact is made after reaching the one metre (3 foot) running line.
Rule 5.5.2 b) ii. 2.

- Case 17 R1 on 3rd, R2 on 2nd and R3 on 1st when B4 hits the ball back to F1. F1 throws to F2 for the force out. F2 then fires a double play throw to F3. However, the throw strikes B4 in the back as he is running outside the one metre (3 foot) running lane. B4 reaches 1st before F3 can recover the ball.
- RULING: B4 should be called out for interfering with the thrown ball while outside the one metre (3 foot) lane. Because the defence successfully executed a play on R1 prior to the interference, this play stands and both B4 and R1 are out. R2 and R3 must return to 2nd and 1st respectively.
Rule 5.5.2 b) ii. 2: 5.5.2 b) ii to xi Effect Exception 1.
- Case 18 With R1 on 1B, B2 bunts the ball fair. F3 and F1 collide while fielding the ball as F4 covers 2B. F3 picks up the ball and throws to 1B and hits B2 in the back outside the running lane with no defence covering 1B. The Umpire calls "Dead Ball" and declares B2 out for running outside the running lane.
- RULING: Incorrect procedure. B2 cannot be out since there is no defensive player covering 1B to make a play and to interfere with. The play should have continued allowing R1 and B4 to advance with liability to be put out. When "Dead Ball" was called all play ceased. The Umpires should correct the situation by placing R1 on 2B and B2 on 1B. Rule 5.5.2 b) ii. 2.
- Case 19 B1 hits a fly ball near the 1st base line. F2 and F1 both go for the ball and both have a chance to catch it. They collide with each other and B1, who is running to 1st. The ball falls (a) fair, or (b) foul.
- RULING: It is interference in both (a) and (b). B1 is out and the ball is dead.
Rule 5.5.2 b) iii.
- Case 20 R1 on 3rd, R2 on 2nd and R3 on 1st with none out. B4 attempts to bunt, as all runners break on the pitch. B4 hits the ball into the air near the foul line and then deliberately runs into F3 to prevent a double play on R1 and himself.
- RULING: This is interference. As the interference was created to prevent a double play, the Umpire declares both B4 and R1 out. R2 and R3 must return to 2nd and 1st respectively.
Rule 5.5.2 b) iii & xi.
- Case 21 R1 on 3rd with none out, when B2 hits a slow roller down the first base line. F3 charges forward, fields the ball and waits to tag B2. On seeing F3 waiting for B2, R1 runs to the plate. F3 now attempts to throw to F2, so B2 brushes the arm of F3, making him drop the ball.
- RULING: B2 is out for interfering with F3 on his attempt to throw the ball. The ball is dead and R1 must return to 3rd.
Rule 5.5.2 b) iv.
- Case 22 R1 on 3rd, when B2 hits a fair ground ball to F3. He fields the ball and throws it to F2 in an attempt to retire R1 at the plate. The throw hits B2, who is running out of the one metre (3 foot) running lane.
- RULING: Although B2 was not running to 1st in the prescribed lane, this is not interference, as the throw was to home, not to 1st. The contact is deemed to be 'incidental', B2 is not out and the ball remains in play. However, if B2 deliberately contacted the thrown ball, then he would be out for interference.
Rule 5.5.2 b) v.

- Case 23** R1 on 3rd with none out, when B2 hits a slow roller down the first base line. F3 charges forward, fields the ball and waits to tag B2. On seeing F3 waiting for B2, R1 runs to the plate. F3 now throws the ball in an attempt to retire R1 but B2 jumps up and deliberately deflects the ball into foul territory.
- RULING:** B2 is out for intentionally interfering with the thrown ball. The ball is dead and R1 must return to 3rd.
Rule 5.5.2 b) v.
- Case 24** B4 hits the ball to F5 with R1 on 3rd and R2 on 2nd. F5 attempts to tag R1, who has led off on the pitch, but misses. He then throws to F3 to try to retire B4. R1 reaches home and R2 advances to 3rd just before B4, who is legally running in the one metre (3 foot) lane, reaches up and deflects the ball away from F3.
- RULING:** B4 should be called out for intentionally interfering with the thrown ball. Because the defence unsuccessfully executed a play on R1 prior to the interference this play stands, so B4 will be out and R1 scores. R2 must return to 2nd.
Rule 5.5.2 b) v; 5.5.2 b) ii to xi Effect Exception 2.
- Case 25** R1 is on 2B and R2 on 1B with one out when B3 hits a high fly ball near the 1B foul line. The umpire calls "Infield Fly if fair", however F3 misjudges the ball and the ball bounces on the ground, spins and strikes B3 who is running toward 1B in (a) fair territory or (b) foul territory. Both R1 and R2 advance one base before F3 recovers the ball.
- RULING:** (a) B3 is out on the infield fly and the ball is dead when it strikes B3. R1 should also be called out. B3 is already 'out' on the infield fly so the contact in fair territory is considered preventing a defensive player's opportunity to make a play on an advancing runner. R2 is returned to 1B.
Rule 5.5.2 b) vi; 5.10.3 c) v.
(b) it is a foul ball, and the ball is dead, B3 returns to bat resumes the count with an additional strike (if less than 2 strikes), R1 and R2 are returned to 1B and 2B.
Rule 5.1.20 d).
- Case 26** R1 on 1st, when B2 hits a spinning ball down the 1st base line. R1 advances safely to 2nd. The ball in fair territory is then contacted by B2, who is just short of 1st and the contact is made before the ball has passed a fielder.
- RULING:** B2 is out for interference and the ball is dead. R1 must return to 1st (the last base touched at the time of the pitch).
Rule 5.5.2 b) vi.
- Case 27** B3 has 2 strikes with none out. He swings at and misses the next pitch, which F2 drops. In running toward 1st, he accidentally deflects the ball from F2, who is attempting to recover it and subsequently beats the ensuing throw to 1st.
- RULING:** This is interference with a dropped third strike. B3 should be declared out.
Rule 5.5.2 b) vii.
- Case 28** B1 has a count of ball 3 strike 2 and swings and misses the next pitch, the ball goes to the catcher's glove, however, bobbles out as the batter's swing follow through contacts the ball as the catcher is attempting to recover it.
- RULING:** This is interference, the batter runner cannot interfere with a catcher in a dropped third strike situation. The batter runner should be declared out.
Rule 5.5.2 b) vii.

- Case 29 B1 has a count of ball 3 strike 2 and swings and misses the next pitch, the ball goes to the catcher's glove, however, bobbles out forward in front of the batter runner. As the batter runner is trying to advance to first base a) the catcher runs into B1 or b) B1 accidentally kicks or steps on the ball.
- RULING: This is not interference, as long as it is not intentional, the batter runner has to be able to run to first base, the dropped third strike was errored by the catcher into B1 running path. The ball remains alive.
Rule 5.5.2 b) vii.
- Case 30 R3 on 3rd, when B4 bunts down the 3rd base line near home plate. In an attempt to hinder F2 fielding the ball, B4 throws his bat at the feet of F2 who stumbles over the bat while trying to get to the ball. B4 beats the ensuing throw to 1st and R3 scores.
- RULING: This is interference. B4 should be declared out. The ball is dead and R3 is returned to 3rd.
Rule 5.5.2 b) viii.
- Case 31 R1 on 3rd with none out, when B2 bunts the ball in front of the plate on a squeeze play. On seeing the ball spinning in front of the plate and realising that F2 can make an easy out on R1 advancing from 3rd, B2 stays in the batter's box. F2 fields the ball but cannot complete the out on R1 due to B2 still being in the batter's box.
- RULING: By not running to 1st after hitting the ball, the action of B2 staying in the batter's box created interference on the play on R1 at the plate. Both B2 and R1 should be declared out.
Rule 5.5.2 b) xi.
- Case 32 B1 receives ball 4 and advances to 1st. Halfway to 1st he drops his batting glove, so he stops, turns around, takes two steps back toward home plate and picks up the glove. He then proceeds to 1st.
- RULING: Since B1 did not step back toward the plate to avoid a tag or a play on him; he should not be called out.
Rule 5.5.2 b) xii.
- Case 33 R1 on 2nd with none out. B2 bunts down the 1st base line and moves very slowly toward F3, who is waiting, ball in hand, to tag him. He stops, and then sways back toward home plate (without moving his feet) to avoid the tag, allowing R1 to reach 3rd. Is this legal or should B2 have been called out for delaying the tag?
- RULING: The action of 'swaying' back without moving the feet is quite legal. B2 should only be called out on this type of play if he physically steps back toward home plate.
Rule 5.5.2 b) xii.
- Case 34 The double base is in use at 1st. B1 hits a ground ball to F9, who is fielding shallow. F9 fields and throws to F3, who is in contact with the fair portion of the base, stretching to take the throw. Just as F3 takes the ball, B1 runs through the fair portion of the base and collides with F3, causing him to drop the ball.
- RULING: When a play is being made on B1 at the double base, B1 must use the foul portion of the base on his first attempt at the base. Because B1 used the fair portion of the base, and F3 was on the fair portion (where he is entitled to be) the collision created interference, so B1 is out.
Rule 5.5.2 b) xiii.

- Case 35 B2 hits a pitched ball over foul territory near third base. F5 is unable to catch the fly ball because the coach remained in the coach's box and did not move.
- RULING: B2 is out, for the coach's 'interference'.
The coach's box is where the coach is to remain when the batter is at bat. Once the ball is hit, the coach must allow the defensive player a chance to make a play on the batted ball, even when it is hit in the area of the coach's box. The coach's box is not a sanctuary.
Rule 5.5.2 b) x; 3.4.3 c).
- Case 36 With R4 on 2nd and R5 on 1st, the first base coach gives his signals and R4 steals for 3rd on the pitch. B6, hits a foul fly ball near first base. The coach at first, noting that R4 will be called out on appeal for leaving too soon on a fly ball if the ball is caught, stands his ground, making F3 run around him. This action causes F3 to drop the ball. What action should the Umpire take, if any?
- RULING: As it is a member of the offensive team (the coach) that has caused F3 to drop the ball, B5 should be declared out on the interference. As the interference was an attempt to prevent a double play, R4 should also be called out, with R5 returning to 1st.
Rule 5.5.2 b) x; 3.4.3 c); 5.10.3 c) viii.
- Case 37 R1 on 1st with one out, when B3 hits a fly ball to F5, who catches the ball, then intentionally drops it. The Umpire calls B3 out but R1, in a state of confusion, sprints toward 2nd and is thrown out. Are both players retired?
- RULING: No. The rule covering an intentionally dropped fly ball is designed to prevent the defence from turning a fly ball into a double play. B3 is automatically out and the ball is ruled dead. R1 returns to 1st.
Rule 5.5.2 b) xiv; 5.1.29
- Case 38 R2 on 2nd and a 2-strike count on B4. B4 attempts a bunt but only succeeds in popping the ball up into the air over foul territory, as R2 advances to 3rd. The ball falls untouched to the ground.
- RULING: B4 is out for bunting foul on the third strike and the ball is dead, so R2 must return to 2nd. Rule 5.5.2 b) xv.
- Case 39 B2, with a 1-2 count, attempts a squeeze bunt on the third strike in an effort to advance R1 from 3rd. The bunted ball pops up into foul territory near 3rd base. R1 collides with F5, who is attempting to catch the bunted fly ball, causing the ball to drop into foul territory.
- RULING: B2 is not out for bunting foul on the third strike. The action of R1 colliding with F5 is interference, resulting in R1 being out. B2 will return to bat with a count of 1 ball 2 strikes.
Rule 5.5.2 b) xv; 5.10.3 c) iv.
- Case 40 The batter is out if an infielder intentionally drops a fair fly ball, including a line drive or a bunt, when there is a runner on 1st with less than 2 out. In order to invoke this rule, does the fielder have to touch the ball?
- RULING: To qualify as an intentionally dropped ball, the ball must actually be caught and then dropped. A fielder may allow the ball to fall untouched to the ground, then recover and attempt to make a play. In such a case, the ball would not be considered as being intentionally dropped.
Rule 5.5.2 b) xiv; 5.1.29.

- Case 41 R1 on 1st, when B2 hits a ground ball to F4. The ball is fielded by F4 but, as he is about to throw to F6 for the force out at 2nd, R1 intentionally brushes his arm and the ball falls to the ground.
- RULING: Both R1 and B2 are out on the interference.
Rule 5.5.2 c) i. 2 & Effect.
- Case 42 R1 on 1st, when B2 hits a foul fly ball down the left field line. As F7 is about to field the fly ball. a) A spectator leans over the fence and interferes with F7 attempting to catch the ball, or b) A spectator enters the field and interferes with F7 attempting to catch the ball, or c) A policeman assigned to the game interferes with F7 attempting to catch the ball, preventing the catch.
- Ruling: In a), b) & c) This is interference. The umpires should rule a dead ball, call B2 out.
Note: The ball is dead, when anybody other than a team member interferes with a fielder's opportunity to field a fair-batted ball. R1 and B2 would be awarded the base or bases they would have made, in the umpire's judgement, had the interference not occurred.
Rule 5.5.2 c) ii. 1.
- Case 43 B5 hits a long foul fly ball to the left field corner. F7 makes up a lot of ground and, just as he is about to catch the ball, a spectator leans over the fence and deflects it away from him.
- RULING: If the umpire considers F7 could have caught the ball, B5 is out. Spectators may not enter the playing field at any time and interfere with a fielder or a live ball.
Rule 5.5.2 c) ii. 2; 5.1.30 d)

5.6 DOUBLE BASE

- Case 1 B1 hits a ground ball to F6, who fields and throws to F3. F3 steps on the foul portion of the double base before B1 arrives at the base.
- RULING: B1 is safe. Defensive players must use the fair portion of the base at all times.
Rule 5.6 a) ii.
- Case 2 B1 misses the third strike, which is dropped by F2 and the ball goes toward the 1st base dugout. B1 runs to 1st inside the running lane. As he approaches the double base, he sees F3 step onto the foul portion and reach into foul territory to take the throw from F2. B1 then moves inside the foul line and touches the fair portion of the base. The ball reaches F3 after B1 touches the base.
- RULING: B1 is safe. This play, for safety reasons, is the one exception to the rule that requires fielders to touch the fair portion of the base at all times. This play also allows B1 the option of taking the fair portion of the base on an infield play, if he sees the fielder taking the foul portion.
Rule 5.6 a) ii.

- Case 3 B1 hits a shallow fly ball down the right field line. The ball lands fair and spins into foul territory where it is picked up by F9. On thinking that F9 may still obtain an out on B1, F3 sets up on the foul portion of the base as B1 nears the base. The throw from F9 beats B1, so the umpire rules B1 out. The offensive team challenge the call, stating that F3 can only set up on the foul portion of the base to take the throw from the home plate area of foul territory.
- RULING: The umpire made the correct call. F3 may set up on the foul portion of the base to receive the throw on any live ball play where the throw is coming from first base foul territory, regardless of whether the throw is coming from the outfield area or the infield area of foul territory.
Rule 5.6 a) ii.
- Case 4 B3 hits a sharp ball into the infield where it is fielded by F5. F3 fumbles the subsequent throw and the ball trickles away into foul territory toward the coach's box. F3 scrambles and recovers the ball and before B3 reaches the base, dives, and touches the foul portion of the base with the ball in the glove. The umpire rules B3 out. Is this the correct call?
- RULING: Yes. Even though F3 only touched the foul portion of the base, the play was being made on a recovered live ball from first base foul territory and on any live ball play from first base foul territory both the batter-runner and fielder may use either portion of the base. Rule 5.6 a) ii.
- Case 5 F2 drops a third strike with no runners on base. The ball is recovered from inside the diamond and thrown to F3, who is standing on the fair portion of the double base. B1 touches the fair portion of the base at precisely the same time as F3 takes the ball.
- RULING: B1 must use the foul portion of the base on a dropped third strike when a play is made at the double base. However, he is not out, unless the defence makes a legal appeal before he returns to the base. Rule 5.6.a) iii.
- Case 6 B1 overruns 1st on an infield hit and touches the foul portion of the base on his return to the fair portion. As he touches the foul portion, F3 tags him with the ball and appeals that he did not return directly to the fair portion of the base.
- RULING: The appeal is disallowed. When touching the foul portion of the base while returning to the fair portion it is deemed as returning direct.
Rule 5.6 a) iv.
- Case 7 B5 hits a double to F7 and touches the fair portion of the double base on the way to 2nd.
- RULING: Legal. B5 may touch either portion of the base on all outfield hits when no play is made at the double base. Rule 5.6 a) v.
- Case 8 R1 on 1st. B2 bunts the next pitch as R1 advances to 2nd. The bunted ball pops up into foul territory on the 1st base side and F3 takes a great diving catch. F3 rolls further into foul territory, turns, and throws to F4, covering 1st, attempting to throw out R1 who has not yet tagged up on the fly ball. F4 takes the throw while touching the foul portion of the base and appeals for the out. R1 now returns to the fair portion of the base so the umpire declines the appeal. The defence claim that, because the throw was being made from 1st base foul territory, the fielder may take either base, so the appeal should be upheld.
- RULING: The defence are incorrect. A fielder may only take the foul portion when the throw from foul territory is being made on a play on the batter-runner. Rule 5.6 a) ii. In this case, B1 is no longer a batter-runner due to the catch, so the throw is now being made on a runner returning to tag up, in which case F4 can only touch the fair portion of the base. Rule 5.6 b): POE 18.

- Case 9 The batter hits a single to right field and over runs 1st base. The runner returns to and stands on the foul portion of 1st base only and the defensive player with the ball tags the runner.
- RULING: The Umpire should call safe as the runner has yet to return to the fair portion of 1st base.
- NOTE: There is no defined time limit as to when a runner, who has overrun first base, must return to the fair portion of the double base. The rule only says that the runner must return to the fair portion. A player who has not yet returned to the fair portion cannot be tagged out for being off the base, unless the runner attempts to advance to second base or has returned to the fair portion and has stepped off the fair portion. A runner, who has not yet returned to the fair portion may be called out for lead off if the pitcher has started the pitch.
- Rule 5.6 b) i & iv. Or for failing to return to the fair portion when F1 has the ball in the circle, also see case plays for 5.10.3 b) iii.
- Case 10 The batter hits a single to right field and over runs 1st base. The runner returns to the foul portion of 1st base only, while talking to the coach. if;
- (a) the defensive player with the ball tags the runner, or
- (b) the runner remains on the foul portion when the Pitcher has possession of the ball in the pitcher's circle.
- What action should the umpire take?
- RULING: The runner is not runner out in both (a) & (b).
- The umpire should call safe as the runner has yet to return to the fair portion of 1st base.
- NOTE: There is no defined time limit as to when a runner, who has overrun first base, must return to the fair portion of 1st base. The rule only states that the runner must return to the fair portion. A player who has not yet returned to the fair portion cannot be tagged out for being off the base, unless the runner attempts to advance to second base or has returned to the fair portion and has stepped off the fair portion. A runner who has not yet returned to the fair portion may be called out for lead off if the pitcher has started the pitch.
- Rule 5.6 b) i & iv.
- Note: After the BR runs through 1st base the double base is deemed to no longer exist.
- Case 11 R1 tags up on the foul portion of the double base on a fly ball and advances to 2nd after the ball is caught by F7. The ball is returned to F3, who appeals the runner left illegally.
- RULING: R1 is out for not tagging up on the fair portion of the base.
- Rule 5.6 b) ii.
- Case 12 F2 attempts a pick-off of R5 at 1st. R5 diving back, reaches around F3 and misses the fair portion of the double base and contacts the foul portion of the base. F3 then tags R5.
- RULING: R5 is out. On attempted pick-off plays, runners must return to the fair portion of the base. Rule 5.6 b) iii.
- Case 13 After safely hitting a single to F8, B1 returns to the fair portion of first base. As the ball is returned to F1, B1 inadvertently steps back and stands completely on the foul portion of the base while talking to his base coach. B1 makes no attempt to stand on, or make contact with, the fair portion of the base. Should B1 be declared out for not being in contact with the fair portion of the base while F1 has possession of the ball in the pitcher's circle?
- RULING: Yes. As the foul portion of the base is no longer deemed to exist after B1 has passed the base, he is obligated to remain in contact with the fair portion of the base at all times, while the pitcher has possession of the ball in the pitcher's circle.
- Rule 5.6 b) iv. 2.

5.7 USE OF ILLEGAL GLOVE

Case 1 B1 hits a ground ball to F6, who fields it with a mitt.

RULING: The play has been made using an illegal glove. The offensive team coach has the option of (a) having the entire play nullified, with B1 batting over again, assuming the ball/strike count before the hit pitch, or (b) accepting the play, with B1 'out', and disregarding the illegal play. The illegal glove is removed from the game and F6 remains in the game.

Rule 5.7 a) & b); 2.1.10; 5.1.34 b)

Case 2 R4 on 3rd and R5 on 2nd with none out. B6 hits a ground ball to F6, who tags R5 advancing to 3rd, and R4 scores. It is now discovered that F6 used an illegal mitt.

RULING: R5 is not out; however, the offensive team coach is given the option of (a) allowing the play to stand, or (b) have B6 bat over again, assuming the ball/strike count he had prior to the pitch he hit, with R4 & R5 returning to 3rd & 2nd.

Rule 5.7 a) & c); 2.1.10; 5.1.34 b)

Case 3 B4 hits a pitched ball toward a defensive player who is wearing an illegal glove. The fielder picks the ball up with the bare hand and makes a play on a runner for an out. The offensive team notices the illegal glove and notifies the umpires before a pitch to B5.

RULING: If the offensive coach appeals, the illegal glove ruling should still be enforced even though the fielder used the bare or non-glove hand to play the batted ball. The manager of the offended team has the option of having the batter bat over, assuming the ball and strike count the batter had prior to the pitch that was hit or taking the result of the play.

Rule 5.7 a) & c); 2.1.10; 5.1.34 b).

Case 4 The defence inform the Plate Umpire that F3 and F9 will swap positions. The Base Umpire noticed that F3 was still wearing a mitt when they went to field in RF. The Base Umpire informs the player that it is illegal to use a mitt as they are now not playing 1B.

RULING: The Base Umpire's actions are correct. If an umpire sees a player enter the field with or is in the field with an illegal glove the Umpire should inform the player that they are using an illegal glove and the glove should be removed.

Rule 5.7; 2.1.10; 2.4.1 a).

5.8 REMOVAL OF HELMET

Case 1 A runner (a) removes his helmet and carries it with him while running the bases, or (b) removes his helmet while standing on a base.

RULING: In (a) the runner is 'out', and the ball remains alive. It does not matter that he did not throw the helmet to the ground. The intent of the rule is safety. In (b) there is no penalty for a runner that removes his helmet while standing on a base and no plays are in progress.

Rule 5.8 a).

Case 2 (a) B4 reaches first base and while standing on the base, removes their helmet, or (b) with the bases full, a 4th ball is called and the runner from 3B removes their helmet prior to touching home plate.

RULING: In either (a) or (b) where there is not a safety factor involved, the player should not be called out. In (b) umpire discretion and common sense should allow the player to score.

Rule 5.8 a).

- Case 3 R1 is on 1B with two outs. B2 hits a fly ball to the outfield for a routine out. The Umpire observes R1 removing their helmet and calls R1 out prior to the ball being caught. Who is the proper batter to start to bat in the next inning?
- RULING: The ball remains live when a runner deliberately removes their helmet. In this case the third out is R1 for removing their helmet. B2 is considered to have completed their turn at bat. B3 would lead off the next inning.
Rule 5.8 a).
- Case 4 R1 on 1st, with none out. B2 bunts the ball up the 1st base line and deliberately removes his helmet as he begins to run toward 1st. F3 fields the ball cleanly and throws to F6 for the force out at 2nd.
- RULING: This is a double play. B2 is called out immediately when he removed the helmet and R1 is out on the force. Deliberately removing the helmet does not cancel a force play situation.
Rule 5.8 a).
- Case 5 R1 on 3rd and R2 on 1st with one out. B4 hits a pitched ball for a double and on rounding 1st deliberately removes his helmet. R1 scores easily and R2 attempts to score when F9's thrown ball makes contact with B4's discarded helmet.
- RULING: B4 is 'out' immediately when the helmet is deliberately removed, and the ball is alive. As soon as the thrown ball makes contact with the discarded helmet the ball is dead, and runners return to the last base held at the time of contact. R1's run counts and R2 returns to 3rd.
Rule 5.8 a) & b) i.
- Case 6 R2 on 2nd, with none out. B3 hits the pitched ball for a single and his helmet falls off as he leaves the batter's box. F9 fields the batted ball and throws it toward F2 in an effort to retire R2 at the plate. The thrown ball makes contact with B3's helmet and R2 scores on the play.
- RULING: When a helmet accidentally falls off a batter-runner or runner the ball remains alive and in play. However, if a thrown ball contacts the helmet while it is detached from its proper place, and this contact interferes with the play being made, the ball becomes dead, the player who was wearing the helmet is called out and other runners return to the last base touched at the time of the contact. In this case, B3 is out and R2 returns to 3rd.
Rule 5.8 b) ii.
- Case 7 R3 on 2nd, with none out when B4 hits the pitched ball for a double. R3 accidentally loses his helmet as he rounds third. F9 fields the batted ball as R3 scores and throws it toward F5 in an effort to retire B4 who is attempting to stretch the hit into a triple. The thrown ball makes contact with R3's helmet and deflects away from F5 before B4 reaches the base.
- RULING: The ball should be ruled dead, R3 called out and the run nullified. B4 is returned to 2nd. The ball remains alive and in play when a helmet accidentally falls off a batter-runner or runner. However, as the thrown ball contacted the helmet while it was detached from its proper place, and this contact interfered with the play being made, the ball becomes dead, the player who was wearing the helmet is called out, even after he has scored with the run nullified, and other runners return to the last base touched at the time of the contact.
Rule 5.8 b) ii.

- Case 8 While attempting to field a bunted ball, F2 comes in contact with B5's helmet that has been (a) accidentally or (b) deliberately removed by B5. The contact prevented F2 from completing a play on B5

RULING: In both (a) and (b), B5 is declared out immediately. It makes no difference whether the removal was accidental or deliberate. If a defensive player comes in contact with a helmet on the ground and this prevented them from making a play, the ball is dead and offensive player is out.

Rule 5.8 b) i & ii.

5.9 TOUCHING BASES IN LEGAL ORDER

- Case 1 B1 hits a long ground ball to the outfield that goes all the way to the fence. He rounds 1st and advances to 2nd but collides with F4 who is standing directly in front of the base. The collision knocks F4 to the ground and he completely covers the base, preventing B1 from being able to touch the base. B1 continues on to 3rd without touching 2nd. Is this legal?

RULING: Yes! The collision with F4 constituted an obstruction, and when obstruction occurs at a base in such a manner that B1 cannot touch the base, he is not obligated to touch that base before advancing to the next base or to awarded bases.

Rule 5.9 a); 5.10.2 d) i. 1. POE 32.

- Case 2 B2 hits a line drive between LF and CF, B2 misses 1st base on their way to 2B as B3 is completely blocking first base creating Obstruction. B2 arrives safely at second base. After the ball is returned to the infield, F3 calls time and appeals for B2 missing the base.

RULING: 'Obstruction' should be called and signalled, with B2 safe at 2nd. A fielder may not block a base without possession of the ball, even if they are at the base and about to receive the thrown ball. If they have possession of the ball, they may then legally block the runner's access to the base. A runner is deemed to have touched and will not be required to touch the base, when Obstructed at the base.

Rule 5.9 a); 5.10.2 d) i. 1.

- Case 3 B1 hits a home run over the fence. As he runs the bases he stops between 2nd and 3rd, thinking he may have missed 1st. He goes back, retouches 2nd and 1st, then turns again and continues on to record his home run by touching 2nd, 3rd, and home. In reality, B2 did not miss 1st at all, so the defence wants an "out" for running the bases in reverse order.

RULING: B1 became a runner as soon as he touched 1st. It is not relevant as to whether he missed 1st or not. This is because, when he returned, he did so properly by retouching 2nd base. The home run is legal.

Rule 5.9 a) & b) ii. & iii.

- Case 4 The scores are tied at the completion of 7 innings, so the tiebreaker is in effect. Team 'A' sends a legal runner to 2nd to start the inning and the runner subsequently scores with only one out. At this point team 'B' complain that the run should not be counted, as the runner has not legally touched first base before scoring.

RULING: The complaint is ignored, as the tiebreak runner is not required to touch first base before starting at second base.

Rule 5.9 a).

- Case 5 B1 hits a fair line drive to the deepest part of the field but in running the bases he misses 1st, and then touches 2nd, 3rd, and home. Before he returns to the dugout, his teammates tell him that he missed 1st. He runs directly to 1st and 2nd again as the ball is returned to the infield.
- RULING: When a runner returns to a base while the ball is in play, he must touch the bases in reverse order. If a proper appeal is made, the Umpire should rule B1 out for missing 1st. If the defence do not appeal, then leave B1 at 2nd.
Rule 5.9 b) ii & iii.
- Case 6 With R1 on 1st, B2 singles to right field. R1 advances to 2nd and touches the base on his way to 3rd. On seeing the ball thrown to F5 he returns to 2nd. He over-slides the base as F5 throws the ball wildly back into right field. He gets up and advances safely to 3rd but, during his advance, fails to re-touch 2nd. The defence now appeal for R1 missing 2nd.
- RULING: The appeal is denied. R1 legally returned to 2nd and, even though he over slid it, that was the last base legally touched. As a result, there was no violation for not touching the base again on the advance to 3rd.
Rule 5.9 d).
- Case 7 R1 on 2nd and R2 on 1st. B3 hits a ground ball to F5, who attempts to tag R1 retreating toward 2nd. R2 advances safely to 2nd on the play and B3 reaches 1st. R1 is eventually tagged while standing on 2nd, so the umpire calls him out.
- RULING: R1 was properly called out. He lost his right to 2nd, as he was forced to vacate it when B3 became a batter-runner. Even though tagged out, this is a force play.
Rule 5.9 d) & f).
- Case 8 R2 on 2nd and B4 at bat with one out. B4 hits a long fly ball to F8, who catches it. R2 then advances to 3rd. When R2 slides into 3rd, the momentum pushes the base from its proper position into foul territory. R2 remains where the base should be and is tagged by F5.
- RULING: R2 is safe. When a runner dislodges a base from its proper position, neither he nor any succeeding runners in the same series of plays, is compelled to follow a base unreasonably out of position.
Rule 5.9 e).
- Case 9 R1 on 1st, when B2 hits safely. Both R1 and B2 advance to, and occupy, 2nd. When the ball is returned to F1 in the pitcher's circle, he claims that either or both of the runners should be called out, since 2 runners cannot occupy the same base at the same time.
- RULING: F1 is correct, but no one is called out automatically. A play must be made on the runners. If both runners are tagged while standing on the base, B2 will be called out. R1 is safe, being the person to legally occupy the base.
Rule 5.9 f).
- Case 10 R1 on 2nd and R2 on 1st with one out. B4 hits a double scoring both runners but R1 misses 3rd. He returns there before an appeal is made.
- RULING: Since R1 may not return to 3rd after a following runner (R2) has scored, he is out on the appeal and his run does not count.
Rule 5.9 g) & h) & effect.

- Case 11 R3 on 3rd advances home on B4's single. He misses home plate and enters his team area. His teammates advise him that he missed the plate, so he promptly returns and touches it. F2, with the ball in his possession, then makes an appeal play by tagging home plate.
- RULING: R3 is out, as he may not return to touch a missed base after he enters his team area.
Rule 5.9 h) & Effect.
- Case 12 R1 on 1st with one out, when B3 hits a line drive to F6, who makes a diving catch. R1 is caught halfway between 1st and 2nd, scrambling back to 1st. F6, attempting to pick him off, throws the ball to F3, but it is wild and goes out of play. R1, on seeing this, (a) stops, does not retouch 1st but advances to 2nd and 3rd, or (b) returns and retouches 1st, then advances to 2nd and 3rd. The defence lodge a proper appeal at 1st.
- RULING: In (a) R1 is out for not retouching 1st. It is his responsibility to retouch even on an overthrown ball and awarded bases. The Umpire should not order him to "go to third", but rather, "advise" him he is awarded 2 bases. In (b) the appeal is disallowed, and R1 is awarded 3rd.
Rule 5.9 i) & Effect.
- Case 13 B1 singles to F9, who throws the ball wildly into the dugout. The umpire awards B1 3rd. While advancing to 3rd he cuts across the infield, rather than first touching 2nd. Is this legal and can the defence get an out on the play?
- RULING: B1 must touch all bases in regular order on awarded bases. The defence must properly appeal B1 for missing 2nd. If they do so, the Umpire should rule B1 out. If they do not appeal, the action by B1 is ruled legal after the 1st pitch to B2.
Rule 5.9 j).
- 5.10 RUNNERS**
- 5.10.1 RUNNERS ARE ENTITLED TO ADVANCE WITH LIABILITY TO BE PUT OUT WHILE THE BALL IS LIVE**
- Case 1 R1 on 1st, when B2 hits a triple. "Time" is called. After a short pause and when F1 takes their place on the pitcher's plate, the umpire calls "Play Ball". F4 now calls for the ball, indicating R1 missed 2nd base, so F1 steps back off the plate and throws to F4 for the appeal. During the throw, B2 advances to home.
- RULING: The ball became alive as soon as the umpire called "Play Ball". The action of F1 stepping off the plate was legal, so R1 is out on the appeal, provided he actually missed 2nd. The advance of B2 was legal, as the ball is alive and no longer in the pitcher's circle.
Rule 5.10.1; 4.3.7; 1.2.6 b)
- Case 2 R1 on 1st. F2, in returning a pitch to F1, throws the ball wildly into centre field, so R1 advances safely to 2nd.
- RULING: The ball remains live, as the overthrown ball did not go out of play. The advance is legal.
Rule 5.10.1 b); 5.1.50
- Case 3 R1, from 1st base, is caught in a run downplay. While running back toward 1st base the thrown ball from F6 accidentally strikes R1. The ball deflects into foul territory and R1 reaches 3rd base before the defence can recover the ball.
- RULING: The ball remains live and in play, when a thrown ball strikes an offensive team player. R1 remains at 3rd.
Rule 5.10.1 c).

- Case 4 B1 singles to rightfield and attempts to stretch it into a double. The thrown ball from F9 strikes the Base Umpire, allowing B1 to arrive safely at 2nd base.
- RULING: When the Umpire is hit with a thrown ball there is no interference. The ball remains live and in play, so B1 is safe at 2nd base.
Rule 5.10.1 c).
- Case 5 A fly ball is caught by F1 in the pitcher's circle. R1 breaks from 1st after the catch, so the Umpire calls him out. Is this call correct?
- RULING: No. Runners may tag up and leave their base when a fly ball is first touched. If they do, then they are governed by the pitcher's circle rule. They are allowed one stop after leaving the base on the fly ball but if they do stop, they must immediately decide to go on to the next base or go back to the original base, (Immediately is not more than three seconds).
Rule 5.10.1 d); 5.10.3 b) iii.
- Case 6 R1 on 2nd, when B2 hits a fly ball to F7. F7 misjudges the flight of the ball and it hits him on the shoulder, after which it deflects to F8, who legally catches it before it hits the ground. R1 tags up at 2nd and leaves as soon as the ball hits F7 on the shoulder but before F8 holds the ball securely in his glove.
- RULING: This is a legal advance. R1 may leave the base as soon as a fielder touches the ball.
Rule 5.10.1 d); 5.10.4 m); 5.1.43.
- Case 7 R1 on 1st when B2 hits a fly ball toward F7. R1 leaves on the hit and advances to 2nd before the ball is caught by F7. The defence returns the ball to F1, who proceeds to pitch to B3. F3 now realises that R1 left before the fly ball was caught, so requests "Time" and appeals.
- RULING: The Umpire should decline the appeal and allow R1 to remain at 2nd, as the appeal has not been made before a pitch to B3.
Rule 5.10.4 i); 1.2.6 a) i & e) ii.
- Case 8 R1 on 1st, when B2 hits a line drive that deflects sharply off F1's foot. The ball strikes R1, who could not avoid being hit, as R1 is advancing to 2nd. F4 is (a) unable to make a play on the ball, or (b) in position to play the deflected ball and make an out.
- RULING: In both (a) and (b) there is no violation, and the ball remains alive and in play.
Rule 5.10.4 f); 5.10 1 e) ii.
- Case 9 R2 on 2nd. B3 hits a line drive that is deflected by F1 onto R2, as he is advancing toward 3rd. R2 could not avoid the contact.
- RULING: There is no violation, as a fielder has touched the ball. The ball remains in play, unless blocked.
Rule 5.10.4 f); 5.10 1 e) ii.
- Case 10 B1 hits a line drive that strikes 1st base, deflects, and accidentally hits a photographer, who is assigned to take pictures of the game, in foul territory. F9 backs up the play, recovers the ball and throws to F4, who tags B1 advancing to 2nd.
- RULING: The ball remains alive and in play, when it strikes a photographer who has been assigned to a game, so the play is legal.
Rule 5.10.1 e) iii.

- Case 11 R1 on 1st when a pitched ball hits the ground bounces up and lodges in F2's chest protector. On seeing this, R1 advances all the way to 3rd before F2 can recover the ball. F2 then suggests to the Umpire that R1 should return to 1st, as he was denied the opportunity of a play when the ball became lodged in the protector.
- RULING: The Umpire should allow R1 to remain at 3rd, as the ball remains alive and in play when it becomes lodged in a defensive player's uniform or equipment.
Rule 5.10.1 f).
- Case 12 B1 hits a short fly ball between the catcher and the pitcher. The catcher throws his helmet and mask on the ground. No one catches the fly ball, and the ball spins rolls inside the catcher's mask and helmet.
- RULLING: This is a live ball situation, as the catcher's mask and helmet are considered official equipment, the offensive team should not be penalised.
Rule 5.1.7 Blocked ball – a batted, thrown, or pitched ball that is touched by any object that is not part of the official equipment or playing field.
Rule 2.1.12 – Official Equipment is any equipment in use by the defensive or offensive team in the course of play.
Rule 5.10.1 f) A live ball and batter-runner and runners advance at their own risk.
Rule 5.10.3 c) xii Non official equipment causing interference
- Case 13 R1 on 3rd as B2 walks. After the ball is returned to F1 in the pitcher's circle, B2 continues on past 1st toward 2nd. F1 fakes a throw to 1st, at which point R1 breaks for home. Is this legal?
- RULING: Yes, a fake throw is considered a play.
Rule 5.10.1 h); 5.10.3 b) iii, iv & v.
- Case 14 B1 reaches 1B on an infield hit and after over-running the base, turns right into foul territory. At this point, B1 notices that the throw to F3 is wild and then takes two quick steps as if going to 2B but stops when they decide they cannot make it. At no time does B1 cross the foul line into fair territory. Before B1 returns to 1B, they are tagged by F3, who appeals. What is the call?
- RULING: B1 is out for being off base after making an attempt to advance to 2B.
Rule 5.10.1 h) & Effect: 5.10.3 a) ix.
- Case 15 R1 on 1B, is stealing on the first pitch to B2. The pitch is declared Illegal and gets away from F2. R1 reaches 2nd and upon seeing that F2 has not yet recovered the ball, attempts to go to 3rd. F2 recovers the ball and throws to F5 who tags out R1 sliding into the base. The offensive team now requests the umpire to enforce the Illegal Pitch penalty and return R1 to 2nd.
- RULING: The request is denied and R1 remains out. R1 is entitled to one base on an illegal pitch not hit. R1 may attempt to advance beyond the one base to which they are legally entitled but are in jeopardy to be put out as the ball remains live.
Rule 5.10.1 j).
- Case 16 B1 hits a fair line drive over the head of F5, who jumps high in an attempt to catch the ball. As he jumps, his glove accidentally dislodges from his hand and touches the ball.
- RULING: If the Umpire decides the detached glove was not thrown at the ball, there is no penalty. If the Umpire decides the act was deliberate, he will advance B1 to 3rd.
Rule 5.10.1.k) ii; 5.10.5 Effect c).

- Case 17 B1 hits a fair ball along the 1st base line in fair territory and F3 throws his glove at the ball.
- RULING: If the glove misses the ball there is no infraction. If the glove touches the ball, it remains alive. If he did not advance 3 bases, B1 is awarded 3rd but may advance further at his own risk.
Rule 5.10.1.k) ii; 5.10.5 Effect c).
- Case 18 B4 bunts down the 1st base line. F1 comes across, picks the ball up with his glove but then drops the ball. F1, not realising he does not have the ball, obstructs B4 while attempting to tag. He then recovers the ball and makes a wild throw to F3. On seeing this B4, who just beat the throw to 1st, continues to 2nd where he is thrown out.
- RULING: A Delayed Dead Ball is signalled at the time of the obstruction. B4 made 1st (the base he would have reached had the obstruction not occurred), so the obstruction call is now nullified. By advancing to 2nd, he does so at his own risk, so he would be out.
Rule 5.10.1 l); 5.10.2 d) i) 3; 5.1.32 b) iii.
- Case 19 R1 is stealing 2nd when B2 receives ball 4. The throw to F4, covering the base, is good as R1 (a) over slides the base, or (b) steps off the base and moves toward 3rd. In either case, R1 is tagged while off base.
- RULING: In both cases R1 is out, as he is only protected until he reaches 2nd. By over sliding or overrunning the base he places himself 'in jeopardy' and is liable to be put out.
Rule 5.10.1 m).
- Case 20 On ball 4, B1 runs directly to 1st and continues to 2nd without stopping. The ball is in F1's possession in the pitcher's circle before B1 reaches 1st.
- RULING: This is a legal action. Provided B1 does not stop at 1st. B1 may continue to 2nd at their own risk.
Rule 5.10.3 b) v; 5.10.1 m).

5.10.2 BASES AWARDED TO RUNNER(S) FOR OBSTRUCTION

- Case 1 The ball is hit to RF. As the runner passes 1B, they are obstructed while no play is being made on them. They are thrown out by a wide margin at home plate.
- RULING: If in the judgment of the Umpire, R1 advanced beyond the base they would have made had R1 not been obstructed, R1 is out. If the Umpire feels the runner would have made it home, R1 is awarded home.
Rule 5.10.2 a) & b); 5.10.1. l); 5.10.2 d) i. 3.
- Case 2 R1 on 1B, B2 hits a ground ball extra base hit to right field that goes between F9 and F8. R1 is obstructed by F4 and falls down, B2 is watching the ball when rounding 1B and continues to run towards 2B passing the obstructed R1 who is still on the ground. No play is being made on R1 when B2 passes. What is the ruling.
- RULING: When R1 is obstructed a delayed dead is signalled and the ball is live. Rule 5.10.2 a).
When B2 passes R1, B2 violates Rule 5.10.3 a) vi.
In the umpire's judgment the obstruction to R1 was the cause of B2 passing R1 and applied rule Appendix 5: A. o) to protect B2.
Time is called and R1 and B2 are awarded the base or bases they would have reached in the umpire's judgment had there been no obstruction.
Rule 5.10.2 b).

- Case 3 R1 on 1st with two out, when B4 hits a double. As R1 goes into 3rd, F5 stands in his path forcing R1 to go around him. B4 attempts to stretch his double into a triple and is thrown out at 3rd. Because of the delay caused by F5, the out is made before R1 touches home plate.
- RULING: R1 is awarded home as, had the obstruction by F5 not occurred, he would have made home before B4 was out. His run is legal.
Rule 5.10.2 b).
- Case 4 R1 slides into 2nd as F4 jumps unsuccessfully for a high throw. As the ball bounds into the outfield F4 falls on top of R1. The players untangle slowly as the ball is returned to the infield. The base umpire is convinced R1 could have advanced to 3rd, if F4 had not fallen on top of him. However, after the pile up, R1 shows no inclination to attempt to advance. Is this an obstruction and should R1 be awarded 3rd?
- RULING: F4's contact, even though unintentional, does in fact impede or hinder R1's progress. By definition, it is obstruction. All runners are awarded the base they would have reached, in the Umpire's judgement, had there been no obstruction. In this case, R1 should be awarded 3rd.
Rule 5.10.2 b).
- Case 5 R1 on 1st with none out, when B2 hits what the umpire judges to be a triple to centre field. However, R1 only advances to 3rd on the hit. While the ball is still in the outfield B2 rounds 2nd, collides with F6, and falls to the ground. He recovers and returns to 2nd. The umpire leaves the runners at 2nd and 3rd.
- RULING: B2 should have been awarded 3rd, if the Umpire thought that was the base, he would have made had the obstruction not occurred. R1 is then awarded home.
Rule 5.10.2 b).
- Case 6 R1 on 1st with none out, when B2 hits a long ball to left field. R1 misses 2nd on his way to 3rd and is then obstructed by F6 between 2nd and 3rd. B2 rounds 1st and advances to 2nd as the ball comes back to the infield. R1 is tagged out as he slides into 3rd (the base he would have reached had there been no obstruction). No appeal is made for the missed base.
- RULING: A runner, who passes a base and does not touch it, is always assumed to have touched it, until an appeal is made. Therefore, the obstruction has preference. An obstructed runner can never be called out between the two bases where he was obstructed, unless appealed for missing a base, so R1 is awarded 3rd.
Rule 5.10.2 b) & d) i. 1.
- Case 7 R2 is obstructed by F5, and knocked off his feet, as he rounds 3rd. He gets up, continues toward home plate and crashes into F2, who is waiting with the ball, causing F2 to drop the ball.
- RULING: On the initial contact, the umpire would rule and call "Obstruction", signals a Delayed Dead Ball, and the ball remains alive. The ball would then become dead, "Interference" ruled and R2 declared 'out' as soon as he crashes into F2. The act of obstruction, not the degree, is what is important in this situation. However, none of the above still permits the runner to deliberately crash a fielder, so the interference overrides the obstruction. Rule 5.10.2 d) i; 5.10.3 c) ix.

Case 8 R1 on 1st with none out, when B2 hits a long ball to left field. R1 misses 2nd on his way to 3rd and is then obstructed by F6 between 2nd and 3rd. B2 rounds 1st and advances to 2nd as the ball comes back to the infield. R1 is tagged out as he slides into 3rd (the base he would have reached had there been no obstruction). The Umpire declares the obstruction so awards R1 3rd base. The defence now appeal for R1 missing 2nd.

RULING: An obstructed runner can never be called out between the two bases where he was obstructed, unless appealed for missing a base. As an appeal has legally been made in this case, the obstruction call should be overturned and R1 is out.

Rule 5.10.2 d) i. 1.

Case 9 R1 on 1st advances to 3rd on B2's single to F9. As B2 rounds 1st he is obstructed by F3 who is standing just off the base without possession of the ball. F9 relays the ball to F4 who, on noticing that R1 is not in contact with 3rd base, throws to F5. R1 retouches 3rd before F5 receives the ball. While this is happening, B2, knowing that the Umpire called 'obstruction', advances toward 2nd. F5 then throws to F6 covering 2nd, who tags B2 sliding into the base. On being called out, the offensive team suggest to the Umpire that the out should be nullified, as an obstructed runner cannot be called out between the 2 bases where he was obstructed.

RULING: B2 remains out. When B2 was obstructed at 1st he had attained the base he would have reached had the obstruction not occurred, as he would not have made 2nd on the initial hit. The throw to F5 in attempting to retire R1 was a subsequent play on a non-obstructed runner, so the protection afforded to B2, the obstructed runner, is removed.

Rule 5.10.2 d) ii.

Case 10 R2 on 2nd with none out. B3 hits a ground ball to F4 and R2 is obstructed by F6 between 2nd and 3rd. (R2 would only have made 3rd had the obstruction not occurred). B3 is thrown out at 1st as R2 rounds 3rd. F3 throws to F2, who snaps a throwback to F5, catching R2 off base.

RULING: Since the obstruction occurred between 2nd and 3rd and the umpire judged R2 would not have made home, he only protects R2 to 3rd. When R2 is tagged between 3rd and home, he is out.

Rule 5.10.2 d) i. 3.

5.10.3 THE RUNNER IS OUT

Case 1 R1 on 1st. B2 hits a ground ball to F4, who fields the ball cleanly. As he attempts to tag R1, who is running directly toward 2nd, R1 stops and takes two steps sideways, resulting in F4 not being able to complete the tag. Had he not taken the sideways steps, F4 would have been able to complete the tag easily.

RULING: R1 should be called 'out', as he has deviated more than 0.91m (3 ft) to avoid being tagged.

Rule 5.10.3 a) i.

Case 2 R1 is on 1st when B2 receives 4 balls. R1 advances to 2nd and B2 advances to 1st. F2, who still has the ball, notices that R1 has rounded 2nd and is actually a couple of metres (6 ft) toward third. He immediately throws the ball to F6 who succeeds in tagging R1 before he can return to 2nd.

RULING: R1 is out. Even though R1 is entitled to advance to 2nd on B2's walk, he forfeits his exemption from liability to be put out if he attempts to advance beyond the base to which he is forced.

Rule 5.10.3 a) ii; 5.10.1 m).

- Case 3 R1 on 1st. B2 hits a sharp ground ball to F3, who touches his base, then touches R1 while he is still on the base.
- RULING: B2 is the only out. F3's act eliminated the force, thereby permitting R1 to remain on 1st.
Rule 5.10.3 a) iii; 5.1.19
- Case 4 B2 hits a home run over the fence. His teammates shake his hand and pat him on the back, while he is between 3rd and home. The defence say he should be out for being assisted by a teammate.
- RULING: B2 is not out. This type of action is not classified as aiding a runner, as no physical assistance has been given to help gain a base or prevent an out.
Rule 5.10.3 a) v.
- Case 5 R3 on first base, when B4 hits a home run over the fence. R3, while running the bases, misses home plate. The coach notices this so he physically puts his hands on B4, who is between 3rd base and home, to stop him advancing to home plate. R3 returns and touches home plate, then B4 advances and touches home plate legally.
- RULING: B4 should be called out for being assisted by other than another runner and the ball remains dead on the home run. The run of R3 counts.
Rule 5.10.3 a) v.
- Case 6 R1 on 1st when B2 singles to F8. R1 stumbles between 1st and 2nd as B2 rounds 1st and continues toward 2nd. B2 stops and helps R1 up and pushes him toward 2nd. R1 advances safely to 2nd as B2 returns to 1st.
- RULING: The action of one runner being assisted by another runner is permitted, so R1 is not out and the ball is alive and in play.
Rule 5.10.3 a) v.
- Case 7 R2 on 3rd, R3 on 2nd and two out, with the score tied in the bottom of the 9th inning. B6 singles and R2 apparently scores the winning run but fails to touch home plate. R2 approaches the dugout but his teammates push him back toward home telling him to touch the plate, which he does. There is a play being made on R2.
- RULING: R2 is out for being physically assisted by a person other than another runner. The run does not score and the game moves into the 10th inning.
Rule 5.10.3 a) v.
- Case 8 R3 on 3rd with none out, when B4 hits a towering fly ball to F7. R3 is about 3 metres (10 feet) down the line toward home and does not return to 3rd to tag up. While the ball is still in flight, the coach at 3rd gets excited and pushes R3 back to 3rd. The ball is caught by F7.
- RULING: R3 is 'out' on the assistance made by other than another runner. As the ball remains alive, B4 is also out on the catch. Rule 5.10.3 a) v; 5.5.2 a) viii.
- Case 9 R3 on 2nd, R4 on 1st and none out, when B5 hits a ground ball to F6 who overthrows the ball beyond the dead ball line. "Dead ball" is declared and R3 is awarded home but fails to touch home plate. The on-deck batter stops him from entering the dug-out and pushes him back to touch home plate. R4 and B5 advance safely to their awarded bases of 3rd and 2nd respectively.
- RULING: R3 is 'out' on the assistance made by other than another runner. Even though the ball is usually alive when anyone other than another runner assists a runner, the ball remains dead when the assistance has been made on a 'dead ball' play.
Rule 5.10.3 a) v.

- Case 10 Bottom of the 7th with the score tied and two out. B5, with R1 on 2nd and R2 on 1st, hits a ground ball that is fumbled by F7. R1 scores on the hit. R2, thinking the game is over, leads off 1st a short distance and stops to watch the play. B5 rounds 1st and passes R2. F7 throws to F6 who then touches 2nd, suggesting it is a force-out, thereby nullifying the winning run.
- RULING: The attempt for an out at 2nd is ignored, as B5 is out for passing R2, thereby breaking the force. B5 is the 3rd out but the team wins as R1 scored before the out was made.
Rule 5.10.3 a) vi.
- Case 11 With R1 on 3rd, R2 on 2nd, R3 on 1st and 2 out, B6 strokes a home run over the left field fence. After the ball goes over the fence B6 passes R3, who is holding up thinking the ball might be caught. Do any of the runs score?
- RULING: B6 should not be called out for passing R3. A runner who passes a preceding runner during a home run or a ground rule double will not be called out. The ball remains dead. Rule 5.10.3 a) vi; 1.2.5 a). SAL TB 2020-2
Note: The runner is not out and must re-establish the running order prior to the passing runner touching the next base. All runners must meet all base running responsibilities, including awarded bases being touched in legal order
- Case 12 With R1 on 3rd, R2 on 2nd, R3 on 1st and 2 out, B6 strokes a deep outfield fly ball that bounds over the left field fence. After the ball goes over the fence B6 passes R3, who is holding up thinking the ball might be caught. Do any of the runs score?
- RULING: B6 should not be called out for passing R3. A runner who passes a preceding runner during a home run or a ground rule double will not be called out. The ball remains dead.
Rule 5.10.3 a) vi; 1.2.5 a). SAL TB 2020-2
Note: The runner is not out and must re-establish the running order prior to the passing runner touching the next base. All runners must meet all base running responsibilities, including awarded bases being touched in legal order. If the Runner that passed a preceding runner touched the next base prior to the preceding runner, they would be called out and the ball remains dead.
- Case 13 R1 on 1st with one out. B2 hits a high fly ball to the infield close to the 1st base line. R1, thinking the ball will be caught, holds at 1st base. B2 runs to 1st and then continues to 2nd base, overtaking R1. The ball falls to the ground in fair territory, untouched, and then bounces into foul territory between home and 1st base.
- RULING: When B2 overtook R1 he would have been out had the ball stayed fair. However, as the ball became an uncaught foul ball no-one is out. B2 returns to continue batting, R1 stays at first and the ball is dead.
Rule 5.10.3 a) vi.
- Case 14 R1 on 3B with no outs. B2 hits a fly ball to right field that is caught. Prior to the ball reaching the fielder, (a) F5 yells "go", or (b) the coach for the defence in the 3B dugout yells "go." R1 leaves 3B too soon and the defence properly appeals.
- RULING: R1 is out on the appeal. Although this is a distracting act, there is no penalty for a defensive player or a coach yelling. The runner should know their own coach's voice and instructions.
Rule 5.10.3 a) vii & Effects; 1.1.1; 1.2.6 e) ii

- Case 15 A runner leaves a base before a caught fly ball is first touched. When should the runner be called out?
- RULING: The Umpire must wait for an appeal from the defensive team.
Rule 5.10.3 a) vii. & Effect
- Case 16 R1 on 2nd. B2 hits a fly ball to the outfield. R1 leaves 2nd before the caught fly ball is first touched by the outfielder. Does the umpire call the runner out for leaving early?
- RULING: The Umpire does not automatically call a runner out for leaving a base before a caught fly ball is first touched. The defence must appeal a runner leaving a base early.
Rule 5.10.3 a) vii. & Effect
- Case 17 R1 on 3rd with one out, when B3 flies out to F8. R1, thinking the side is out, leaves the base and goes directly to the dugout.
- RULING: R1 is out as soon as R1 enters the dugout. No appeal or tag is necessary.
Rule 5.10.3 a) xi.
- Case 18 R3 on 3rd and R4 on 2nd, when B5 hits a long fly ball to F7. On seeing this, R3 positions behind but not in contact with 3rd base in order to get a running start on the catch. R4 holds up at 2nd base and advances to 3rd base after the catch and on the subsequent throw to F2. R3 is called out for taking a running start on the catch.
- RULING: When R3 was called out the ball remained live, so the advance of R4 is legal.
Rule 5.10.3 a) xii.
- Case 19 In order to get a running start after a long fly ball has been touched, R2 stands more than a metre (3 feet) behind 3rd.
- RULING: R2 is out for being out of the base path to gain an advantage. The Umpire should declare R2 out, immediately R2 takes a position behind the base. This is the same as if R2 runs off the base path to avoid being tagged out. The ball remains alive.
Rule 5.10.3 a) xii.
- Case 20 R5 is on 3rd and R6 is on 1st with none out. During a "Time Out" with B7 at bat, R5 & R6 switch bases. B7 proceeds to hit a foul ball down the left field line. The defensive team now appeal to the umpire that the runners had switched positions on bases.
- RULING: Even though a pitch has been thrown to B7, the appeal is legal. As runners may not switch bases at any time, R6, who is now closest to home, should be the first declared out, followed by R5, with B7 continuing to bat. The Head Coach should also be ejected for unsportsmanlike conduct.
Rule 5.10.3 a) xiii & Effect.
- Case 21 R5 is on 3rd and R6 is on 1st with none out. During a defensive conference while B7 is at bat, R5 & R6 switch bases. B7 proceeds to hit a fair ball single down the left field line and R6 scores. The defensive team now appeal to the umpire that the runners had switched positions on bases.
- RULING: Even though a pitch has been thrown to B7, the appeal is legal. As runners may not switch bases at any time, R6, who has now scored, should be the first declared out and the run nullified, followed by R5. The Head Coach should also be ejected for unsportsmanlike conduct. B7 remains at 1st and B8 now bats.
Rule 5.10.3 a) xiii & Effect.

- Case 22 R5 on 3rd and R6 on 1st with none out when "Time" is called by the umpire. During the "Time Out" R6, being a faster runner than R5, goes to 3rd while R5 goes to 1st. When play resumes, B7 bats and hits a fly ball to F7, who catches the ball for the first out. R6 scores on the catch and R5 advances to 2nd. B8 comes to bat and takes the first pitch for a called strike. The defensive team now appeal to the Umpire that the runners had switched positions on bases. Is the appeal legal and, if so, what should the Umpire do?
- RULING: The Umpire should accept the appeal, even though several pitches have elapsed since the infraction and one of the runners is still on base. Because the runners switched bases, both R5 and R6 are declared out and the run scored by R6 is nullified. The Head Coach of the team is also ejected for unsportsmanlike conduct. Rule 5.10.3 a) xiii & Effect.
- Case 23 When an appeal is made for runners switching bases, they occupied can such appeal be made after a legal, or illegal, pitch has been thrown?
- RULING: Yes. Appeals of this nature may be made at any time until all such runners are in the dugout or the half inning is over. Rule 5.10.3 a) xiii & Effect.
- Case 24 R1 at 3B, R2 at 2B and R3 at 1B with two outs. The offensive coach calls a time out and brings all runners in for conference. Needing two runs to tie, the coach has R2 and R3 switch because of R3's speed. When the conference is over, R3 goes to 2B and R2 to 1B. B4 hits a double scoring R1 and R3, with R2 advancing to 3B. B5 strikes out. Now the defence appeals to the umpire that R2 is on 3B and was on 2B prior to the conference.
- RULING: The Umpire calls both R2 and R3 out, and nullified the run scored by R3. R1's run does score. The manager calling the charged conference is ejected from the game. Rule 5.10.3 a) xiii. & effect.
- Case 25 F1 has the ball in the pitcher's circle, with R1 on 1st and one out. R1 leaves 1st before F1 releases the ball to B2, who hits a line drive that is caught by F3.
- RULING: R1 is out for leaving base too soon, so the ball becomes dead. B2 will return to bat again with the pitch being classified as a "No Pitch". Rule 5.10.3 b) ii; 4.5 b).
- Case 26 B3 takes a called 3rd strike for the 1st out of the inning, as R2 leads off 2nd on the pitch. F2 returns the ball to F1 standing in the pitcher's circle. R2, still off base, makes no attempt to move either way.
- RULING: Failure to immediately (not more than three seconds) proceed to the next base or return to his base, once F1 has the ball in the pitcher's circle, shall result in R2 being declared out. Rule 5.10.3 b) iii.
- Case 27 B1 hits a single to right field and over-runs first base. F9 throws the ball back to F1. On returning to first base, B1 stands on the foul portion momentarily, before B1 has time to step onto the fair portion of the base, the defence request "Time" and appeal for B1 being off base while F1 has possession of the ball in the pitcher's circle.
- Ruling: The umpire should deny the appeal. Even though F1 has the ball in the pitcher's circle B1 is allowed to return through the double base to 1st base. B1 cannot just stand off the fair portion of the base when F1 has the ball in the circle, or once on the fair portion of the base he cannot leave the base again to advance to 2nd or will be called out. Rule 5.10.3 b) iii.

- Case 28 R1 on 1st with none out. F1 has the ball in the pitcher's circle but lays it down, in their glove, to tie their shoes. R1 advances to 2nd.
- RULING: No penalty. It is a legal advance.
Rule 5.10.3 b) iv. 2.
- Case 29 R3 on 3rd with none out, when B4 bunts the ball in front of home plate on a squeeze play. R3 slides home and accidentally deflects the ball out of play, prior to touching home plate and just before F1, who could have made an out on R3, touches the ball. The umpire rules R3 safe and awards B4 2nd.
- RULING: The call is incorrect. R3 is out for contacting an untouched fair-batted ball. The ball is dead on the interference, so B4 is awarded 1st.
Rule 5.10.3 c) i.
- Case 30 R1 on 1st, when B2 hits a ground ball to F4. The ball contacts R1 (before it reaches F4) and deflects straight to F4, who is able to turn a double play by touching 2nd and then throwing to 1st.
- RULING: The ball is dead as soon as it strikes R1. R1 is out for interference and B2 is awarded 1st. No double play is possible.
Rule 5.10.3 c) i.
- Case 31 R2 on 2nd, when B3 hits a ground ball toward F6. The ball passes F6 without being touched by him and no other fielder has a chance to make an out. R2 intentionally kicks the ball.
- RULING: R2 is out for interference and the ball is dead.
Rule 5.10.3 c) ii.
- Case 32 R2 on 1B one out, F3 is fielding deep when B4 hits a high fly ball near the 1B foul line. F3 in fair territory while moving in to catch the ball is interfered by R2 holding up, the ball bounces on the ground, spins, and rolls foul without contact. R2 advances one base before F3 recovers the ball.
- Ruling: Interference is ruled when F3 contacts R2, R2 is called out and the ball becomes dead immediately
Rule 5.1.30; 5.10.3 c) iii.
The ball is judged fair at the time of the interference, B4 is placed on 1B
Rule 5.1.16 h).
- Case 33 R1 on 2nd. B2 hits a ground ball toward F5 (who makes a play on it) but the ball goes untouched between his legs. F6 has a chance to play the ball but R1 collides with him as he attempts to field the ball.
- RULING: R1 is out for interfering with a fielder attempting to field a batted ball.
Rule 5.10.3 c) iii.
- Case 34 R1 is at 2nd. B2 hits a pitched ball sharply toward F1 who deflects the batted ball but cannot make the play. F6 moves in to follow up on the play and in so doing, collides with R1, who has led off from 2nd.
- RULING: Even though the ball has been deflected by F1, F6 is still considered to be fielding a batted ball. When the collision occurs, R1 should be declared 'out' on the interference, B2 is awarded 1st and the ball is dead.
Rule 5.10.3 c) iii.

- Case 35 R2 on 2nd, when B3 hits a ground ball to F6, who fields the ball cleanly. F6 throws to 1st, as R2 collides with him but the throw still reaches 1st in time to retire B3. The collision is (a) unintentional, or (b) intentional.
- RULING: In (a) R2 is out for interference, the ball is dead and B3 is awarded 1st. In (b) both R2 and B3 are out.
Rule 5.10.3 c) iii. & Effect; 5.5.2 c) i. & Effect.
- Case 36 R1 on 1st with one out, when B3 hits a fly ball to F4. While advancing to 2nd R1 stops in front of F4, who is attempting to catch the ball. He waves his hands in F4's face, causing him to drop the fly ball.
- RULING: Although no physical contact has been made between R1 and F4, or with the ball, the action of R1 waving his hands has impeded F4 from completing the play. As a result, this is a form of interference, so R1 should be called out.
Rule 5.10.3 c) iii; 5.1.30 a)
- Case 37 R1 on 3rd with one out. B4 hits a fly ball to the area in fair territory just behind 3rd where F5 has a chance to catch it. R1 leaves 3rd on the hit and slightly contacts (accidentally) F5 on his advance. F5 catches the ball for the 2nd out.
- (a) Because B4 was caught out, and F5 then has a chance to make a play (for the 3rd out) on R1, as he tries to return to 3rd base, should the umpire allow play to continue? or (b) Should the umpire call Dead Ball and rule R1 out for Interference, with B4 being advanced to 1st base on the dead ball.
- RULING:
In (a) If the physical contact appears incidental and does not create interference, and the umpire feels that F5 can still make a play (catch in this case), then the umpire should not call interference.
A mere brushing against a defensive player by a runner may not be interference if the defensive player can still easily make the play.
The Umpire must watch for the reaction of the defensive player as a result of the action of the offensive player.
1. This is not a delayed dead ball situation and should not be signalled as such.
2. If it is determined that there was no interference, umpires should be prepared to explain their ruling to coaches.
In (b) If the physical contact by R1 creates interference, then the umpire should call a Dead Ball and rule Interference.
The Umpire must watch for the reaction of the defensive player as a result of the action of the offensive player.
If the umpire judges that offensive player impedes, hinders, or confuses a defensive team member attempting to make a play, then the umpire should call a Dead Ball and rule Interference.
Rule 5.10.3.c) iii
- Case 38 R1 on 1B runs toward 2B when B2 hits a ground ball to F4 who does not field it cleanly. It is within 1 meter of F4 and as they bend down to pick up the ball R1 comes in contact with the ball and deflects it away from F4. F4 would have been able to complete a play.
- Ruling: The umpire should call dead ball and R1 is out. Even though F4 had not fielded it cleanly they are still considered to be fielding a batted ball and there was still a play possible. This is different to a runner being hit by an errored ball that passes a fielder and comes in contact with the runner.
Rule 5.10.3 c) iii.

- Case 39 R2 on 3rd, when B3 hits a high foul fly ball near 3rd base. F5 attempts to get across to make the catch but is prevented from doing so by R2 who is returning to 3rd base.
- RULING: R2 is out on interference as they interfered with F5 attempting to catch a batted foul fly ball. The batter-runner will return to bat with an additional strike on the foul ball, provided the count prior to batting the ball was less than two strikes. If the interference is the third out of the inning, the batter-runner will return as lead-off batter in the next inning, with a new count.
Rule 5.10.3 c) iv.
- Case 40 Runners on 2nd and 3rd base with no outs. B3, who has 2 strike count, bunts the ball in an attempted squeeze play. The ball pops up in the air over foul territory towards F5 who is in position to catch the ball. R1, in attempting to return to 3rd base, and realizing that R2 will be thrown out if the ball is caught, intentionally collides with F5 who is in foul territory. The ball falls uncaught to the ground. The umpire rules B3 is out for bunting foul on the third strike, R1 is out on the interference and R2 out for the intentional attempt by R1 to prevent a double play. Is the umpire correct.
- RULING: No. Only 2 outs would be given on the play. R1 is out for the interference, and R2 would be out on R1's obvious attempt to prevent a double play. B3 would return to bat with a two strike count.
Rule 5.10.3 c) iv,
- Case 41 R1 on 3rd, R2 on 2nd and R3 on 1st with one out. B4 strikes out but the ball gets away from F2 and goes back to the net. All runners advance and R1 scores before F2 can recover the ball. B4, who is heading toward the dugout, causes interference (a) intentionally, or (b) unintentionally, to F2, who is attempting to retrieve the ball and make a play on the remaining runners. F2 did not have a play on R2 advancing to the plate but could have made a play on R3 at 3rd or at the plate.
- RULING: It does not matter whether the interference is intentional or unintentional. The batter (B4), who has already been declared out on the dropped third strike rule, cannot be given out a second time, even though he is the one who caused the interference. In both (a) and (b) the runner closest to home plate (R2) at the time of the interference is out and the ball is dead. Other runners return to the last base legally held at the time of the interference.
Rule 5.10.3 c) v.
- Case 42 R1 on 3rd. B2 hits the ball to F6, who fields, holds R1 at 3rd and then throws to F3 for the out. R1 breaks for home on the throw. F3, in attempting to throw to F2 to retire R1, is contacted by B2 who has stepped inside the foul line on his way to 1st. F3 throws wildly and R1 scores.
- RULING: B2, after being called out, has interfered with F3's opportunity to make a play on R1. As B2 cannot be called out a second time on the interference, a dead ball is declared and the runner closest to home at the time of the interference (R1) is declared out.
Rule 5.10.3 c) v.
- Case 43 R1 on 1st with one out. B3 hits a ground ball to F4, who throws to F6 at 2nd for a force out. F6 relays the ball to 1st but not in time for the double play. R1, who was called out at 2nd, continues to advance at full pace toward 3rd. The confused F3 attempts to throw him out at 3rd. However, he throws the ball out of play, allowing B3 to advance to 3rd.
- RULING: The action of R1, continuing to run the bases after he was retired, is a form of interference. The runner closest to home (B3) is called out.
Rule 5.10.3 c) v.

- Case 44 B1 hits a long ground ball to deep right field. He rounds all bases and advances toward home, as F9 relays the ball to F4, who turns and throws to F2 for a possible play at the plate. Meanwhile, B1's teammates, thinking that he will score a run, leave the dugout and gather at the plate to offer their congratulations. F2 takes the throw and attempts to tag B1 sliding for the plate but is unable to do so due to the other offensive players gathering at the plate.
- RULING: The action of the offensive players gathering at the plate and making the play by F2 difficult creates interference. As a result of the interference, B1 is ruled out and the ball is dead.
Rule 5.10.3 c) vi.
- Case 45 R1 on 2nd and R2 on 1st. B3 singles a ground ball to F8 and both runners advance one base. The coach at 3rd runs quickly toward home plate, as F8 fields the ball. On seeing this, and thinking the coach is a runner, F8 throws to F2. The throw gets away from F2 and R1 scores, R2 advances to 3rd and B3 advances to 2nd.
- RULING: This is coach's interference, and the ball is dead immediately when the throw is released. R1 is declared out on the interference, with R2 and B3 returned to 2nd and 1st respectively.
Rule 5.10.3 c) vii.
- Case 46 R2 on 2nd, when B3 hits a slow roller to F4, who fields and throws to F3. F3 loses possession of the ball as R2 rounds 3rd, so B3 continues to run toward 2nd. F3 recovers the ball and, just as he is about to throw to F6 at 2nd, the coach at 1st prevents him from throwing by stepping directly in front of him. R2 now crosses the plate.
- RULING: This is coach's interference. R2, the runner closest to home plate, is out on the interference. The ball is dead and B3 must return to 1st.
Rule 5.10.3 c) viii.
- Case 47 R1 on 3rd and B2 at bat with a ball 3 count, when a wild pitch is delivered. R1 advances toward home and B2 advances toward 1st as F2 recovers the ball. Meanwhile, the batboy comes out to get the bat and causes interference by (a) just getting in the way, causing F2 not to throw to F3 covering the plate for fear of hitting him, or (b) being hit by the thrown ball from F2, in his attempt to throw R1 out at the plate. In both cases, the interference was unintentional on the part of the batboy.
- RULING: The batboy is a member of the team. In both (a) and (b) it is interference. The runner being played on (R1) is out and the ball is dead. B2 returns to the last base touched at the time of the interference.
Rule 5.10.3 c) vi & viii.
- Case 48 R1 on 3rd, R2 on 2nd, R3 on 1st and none out, when B4 hits a single to F8 who throws home trying to prevent extra runs scoring. The throw is wild and F2 runs into the batboy while attempting to retrieve the ball. At this point R1 and R2 have scored, R3 was looking to score on the overthrow and B4 was advancing to 3rd.
- RULING: This is interference by a non-playing member of the offensive team. R3, the runner closest to home plate, is out. The ball is dead and B4 must return to 2nd.
Rule 5.10.3 c) viii.

Case 49 R1 on 1st leads off on the pitch, so F2 throws to F4 covering 1st, in an attempted pick-off. F4 has the ball waiting to tag R1 coming back to base but R1 remains on his feet and crashes into F4, causing him to drop the ball. This is most often a play between runners coming from 3rd who crash into F2 at the plate. Does the rule that covers the runner/catcher situation also apply in this situation?

RULING: Yes. It applies to any defensive player, so R1 is out. Other runners must return to the last base touched at the time of the collision.

Rule 5.10.3 c) ix.

Case 50 F2 has received the ball and is waiting to tag R3, attempting to score. R3 drops his shoulder and deliberately crashes into F2, causing him to drop the ball.

RULING: R3 is out for interference and the ball is dead. He is also ejected if the act is considered to be flagrant.

Rule 5.10.3 c) ix.

Case 51 R1 on 3rd with none out. B2 bunts down the 1st base line and moves very slowly toward 1st. R1 runs toward 2nd in an attempt to draw a throw. F3, on seeing this, fields the ball and throws to F6 covering 2nd. R1 then turns and runs safely back to 3rd as B2 reaches 1st.

RULING: R1 is out as soon as he ran toward 2nd, for running bases in reverse order. The ball is dead and B2 is awarded 1st.

Rule 5.10.3 c) x.

Case 52 R1 on 3rd, R2 on 1st with none out. On the pitch, R2 sprints towards F9 and remains at right field. F2 throws to F6 for the tag on the perceived steal to 2nd base. F6, confused, moves toward F9 to tag R2. At this point R1 steals for home.

RULING: The ball is dead and R2 is out for running off the base line in an attempt to confuse the fielders. R1 is returned to 3rd.

Rule 5.10.3 c) x.

Case 53 At the end of an inning, F2 leaves his mask outside the dugout. His team now comes to bat and during the course of the inning, a thrown ball hits the mask (a) causing interference on an attempted play on a runner, or (b) causing the ball to ricochet away but no play is obvious.

RULING: The Umpire should call the ball dead immediately it hits the mask. In (a) the runner being played on is out; in (b) no one is out. In both cases other runners must return to the last base legally held at the time the ball hits the mask.

Rule 5.10.3 c) xii; 5.10.4 p).

5.10.4 RUNNERS ARE NOT OUT

Case 1 R1 is at 2nd with one out. B2 hits a pitched ball on the ground toward F6. While advancing to 3rd, R1 jumps over the ball to avoid being hit. F6 dives for the ball but makes no play and the umpire makes no call. The defensive coach questions why there is no interference call on R1. The umpires then get together for a conference.

RULING: Unless R1 stopped F6 from reaching the ball it is not interference. Interference is not an appeal play and must be called immediately at the time of the interference. A runner may run around, in front of or behind a fielder, or jump over the ball to avoid contacting the fielder or the ball.

Rule 5.10.4 a).

- Case 2 R2 on 2nd, when B3 hits a ground ball to F6. F6 is about to field the ball which is in R2's base path, so R2 runs in front of him in order to avoid interfering. F6 fumbles the ball, so the defence want R2 called out for interference, as they claim R2 cannot run in front of a fielder fielding a batted ball.
- RULING: R2 is not out. Provided he does not create interference, R2 may run in front of, or behind, F6 in order to avoid him while he is fielding the ball.
Rule 5.10.4 a).
- Case 3 R1 on 1st steals 2nd but runs off the direct line to the base while advancing. The throw from F2 to F4 goes wildly into centre field.
- RULING: This is a legal advance. There is no penalty for running off the direct line to a base unless it is done to avoid being tagged by the ball while in the hand or glove of a fielder.
Rule 5.10.4 b)
- Case 4 A batted ball passes untouched between F3's legs and accidentally strikes R1, who is running to 2nd behind F3. In the umpire's judgement, no other fielder has a chance to make an out.
- RULING: R1 is not out and the ball remains alive and in play.
Rule 5.10.4 d); 5.5.1 e) Effect 2)
- Case 5 R1 on 2B, when B7 hits a sharp ground ball past F1. The ball contacts R1, who is one step off 2B, and bounds into CF. No other fielder has any chance to make a play on the ball.
- RULING: R1 is not out, and the ball is live.
NOTE: If R1 had been on the base, and the ball had hit R1, the ball would be dead or live depending on the closest fielder. In most cases at 2B, the ball would be dead, as both F4 and F6 would play behind the base.
Rule 5.10.4 d).
- Case 6 R1 on 3B leads off in foul territory, as B2 slams a sharp line drive down the foul line. The ball hits the base, bounces back and hits R1 who is still in foul territory. F5 would not have been able to make an out.
- RULING: R1 is not out. Although R1 has been hit by a fair batted ball (it became fair when it hit the base), R1 cannot be called out when hit in foul territory.
Rule 5.10.4 e).
- Case 7 R1 leads off 2nd when B2 hits a sharp ground ball straight up the middle. R1, on seeing F6 moving around behind the base in an attempt to field the ball, steps back onto the base. The ball contacts R1, while still on the base, before it reaches F6.
- RULING: Even though the ball has not yet passed a fielder, other than F1, R1 is not out as the ball has contacted R1 while on the base; however, the ball will be dead.
Rule 5.10.4 g) & Effect.
- Case 8 R1 on 1st runs toward 2nd when B2 hits a ground ball to F4. F4 fields the ball cleanly, takes the ball out of the glove, and tags R1 with the glove as he runs past, then throws to 1st in an attempt to complete a double play.
- RULING: R1 is not out. He has been touched off base with the glove of F4, while the ball is in the other hand.
Rule 5.10.4 h) ii.

- Case 9 In the last half-inning R2 scores the winning run. The umpire notices that R2 misses 3rd. No player indicates that the infraction has been seen. After all players have left fair territory, F5 comes back to 3rd and makes an appeal play.
- RULING: It is too late for an appeal. The half-inning ended when all the players abandoned fair territory, with no player indicating an appeal would be made. The same principal applies to each half-inning, as well as the last one.
Rule 5.10.4 i); 1.2.6 a) ii).
- Case 10 B1 hits a ground ball to F5 and beats the ensuing throw to 1st. B1 runs past the base and, while returning to it, is tagged by F3, who appeals for an out.
- RULING: The appeal is denied and B1 is safe. B1 may touch and run past 1st base without being in jeopardy provided he returns immediately to the base and makes no attempt to advance to 2nd.
Rule 5.10.4 j).
- Case 11 B1 hits a ground ball to the infield. F6 throws to 1st to try for the out but the ball gets away from F3. B1 touches and over-runs 1st and remains in (a) foul territory and turns to his right, or (b) foul territory and turns to his left, or (c) fair territory and turns to his right, or (d) fair territory and turns to his left. In all cases, he does not make an attempt to advance to 2nd.
- RULING: In all cases B1 is safe. It does not matter which way he turns, in either fair or foul territory, provided he makes no attempt to go to 2nd. Rule 5.10.4 j)
- Case 12 R1 on 1st takes a long lead off on the pitch. F2 returns the ball directly to F1, who totally ignores R1 returning slowly to 1st. Before R1 retouches 1st, F1 legally releases the next pitch.
- RULING: R1 is not out for being off base. R1 action of returning slowly was legal and it is up to F1 to ensure that he does not release the next pitch, until R1 has retouched. R1 may legally advance on the subsequent pitch.
Rule 5.10.4 k).
- Case 13 R1 on 2nd, when B2 hits a fly ball between F4 and F9. The ball tips F4's glove and the catch is completed by F9. R1 leaves 2nd after the ball tips the glove and advances safely to 3rd. The defence now appeal properly for R1 leaving 2nd before the catch.
- RULING: R1 is not out and remains on 3rd. R1 is entitled to leave as soon as a fielder first touches the ball.
Rule 5.10.4 m); 5.10.1 d).
- Case 14 B1 hits a sharp fair-batted ball down the first base line. The ball cannons into the base and deflects toward the coach's box, where it accidentally contacts the base coach before the base coach could avoid the ball. The ball deflects into the outfield, resulting in B1 advancing to 3rd.
- RULING: A fair-batted ball accidentally contacting a coach in the coach's box is not considered as being interference. The ball remains alive and in play, so B1 remains at 3rd.
Rule 5.10.4 o).
- Case 15 B1 hits a sharp ground ball to F6, who throws to F3. The throw is wild and accidentally strikes the base coach, who is standing in the coach's box. Does the ball become dead?
- RULING: A thrown ball accidentally contacting a coach in the coach's box is not considered as being interference. The ball remains live and in play.
Rule 5.10.4 o).

Case 16 R1 from 1st slides into 2nd, dislodging the base and sending it some distance from its position. F4 now tags R1 who is scrambling toward the dislodged base. Is the runner out?

RULING: R1 is not out as he was tagged after reaching the base and after the base became dislodged. This is not considered to be an attempt to reach the next base, but simply an attempt to remain safe. Rule 5.10.4 n).

Case 17 R1 on 1st. He steals to 2nd safely but in doing so, dislodges the base as he slides in. The throw from F2 gets away from F6, so R1 makes to advance to 3rd. However, on seeing F8 quickly recover the ball, R1 starts back towards where 2nd base was before being dislodged, but is tagged out before reaching the base. The offensive team manager claims R1 should not be out as the base has been dislodged from its proper place.

RULING: R1 is out. Although the base has been dislodged from its proper position, he forfeited his exemption from being put out as soon as he made an attempt to advance to the next base. Rule 5.10.4 n).

Case 18 R1 slides into 2nd. After touching the base, R1 loses contact because the base breaks loose from its fastening. F4 tags R1 still off the base.

RULING: R1 is not out, as the base is dislodged and considered to have followed the runner. Rule 5.10.4 n).

5.10.5 BASE RUNNING EFFECTS (OTHER THAN FOR OBSTRUCTION)

Case 1 R1 on 1st when a pitched ball is dropped by F2. The plate umpire, in an effort to get out of the way, accidentally deflects the ball into the dugout.

RULING: R1 is awarded 2nd (one base from the base he held at the time of the pitch). The action of the umpire, in contacting the pitched ball, makes no difference. It is treated the same as a wild pitch that goes out of play.
Rule 5.10.5 Effect a) ii. 2.

Case 2 R1 on 1st, when B2 hits a ground ball to F6, who throws to F3. F3 misses the catch and the ball rolls toward the dead ball line. The ball never does go out of play but F3, after picking up the ball, accidentally puts one foot over the line into out-of-play territory. When his foot goes out of play, R1 has passed 2nd and B2 has passed 1st. (The ball, while in F3's hand, is still in playable territory but his foot is out of play.)

RULING: It is considered that the ball has been unintentionally carried out of play, so it is dead. R1 is awarded 3rd and B2 is awarded 2nd. The one base award is from the last base touched at the time the ball was carried into dead ball territory. (This is not to be confused with the usual overthrow where the ball goes out of play). In this case, the ball was unintentionally carried out.
Rule 5.10.5 a) ii. 3.

Case 3 R1 on 3rd with one out, when B3 hits a foul fly ball to F5, who catches it in the field of play. F5 then carries it into a dead ball area such as a bench or dugout.

RULING: The ball is dead as soon as F5 enters the dead ball area with the ball.
Rule 5.10.5 Effect a) ii. 3.

Case 4 Loaded bases, B4 hits a long deep fly ball to F8. As F8 is running back to catch the ball they push the temporary fence over, F8's feet and lower body stay on top of the fence, however the glove with ball in it touches the ground in dead ball territory.
Ruling: This is a valid catch and unintentionally carrying the ball dead. B4 is out of the fly ball, runners advance 1 base from the time the ball is ruled dead.
Rule 5.10.5 a) ii) 3; and Rule 2.2.1 d).

- Case 5 R1 on 1st and running on the pitch. B2 hits sharply to F5, who sees no play at 2nd, so throws to 1st. R1 touches 2nd while the thrown ball is in flight. The throw draws F3 off the base, so he attempts to tag B2. He loses possession of the ball on the tag and it goes out of play after B2 touches 1st.
- RULING: R1 is awarded 3rd and B2 awarded 2nd.
Rule 5.10.5 Effect a) ii. 4.
- Case 6 B2 at bat with a 2 ball 1 strike count and R1 on 1st. F1 delivers a pitch that F2 does not handle cleanly. R1 attempts to advance as F2 drags the ball back with his detached mask. R1 is subsequently thrown out at 2nd. The offence now claims that R1 should be safe at 2nd, as F2 is not permitted to recover the ball with his mask.
- RULING: The offence is correct, as the catcher has illegally recovered the pitched ball. R1 is awarded 2nd, the ball remains alive and R1 may advance further at his own risk. B2 will remain at bat with an extra ball or strike, depending on the call on the pitch.
Rule 5.10.5 a) ii. 6.
- Case 7 R1 on 1st when F1 delivers a pitch that F2 does not handle cleanly. Thinking R1 will attempt to advance, F2 drags the ball back with his detached mask. R1 does not advance.
- RULING: F2 has recovered a pitched ball with equipment detached from its proper place. Because R1 was not advancing at the time, no award is made.
Rule 5.10.5 Effect a) ii. 6.
- Case 8 B2 has a count of 2 balls 1 strike. F1 delivers a pitch that F2 does not handle cleanly and he drags the ball back with his detached mask. The offence now claims that B2 should be awarded 1st, as F2 illegally recovered the ball with his mask.
- RULING: The offence is incorrect, as B2 can only advance to 1st if the pitch was Ball 4 or a dropped third strike.
Rule 5.10.5 Effect a) ii. 6.
- Case 9 R1 on 1st. B2 hits a fair line drive that deflects off F5's glove and rolls out of play. R1 (a) is not yet at 3rd, or (b) is between 3rd and home when the ball goes out of play.
- RULING: In both (a) and (b) it is a ground rule double. R1 is awarded 3rd and B2 is awarded 2nd.
Rule 5.10.5 b) i. 2.
- Case 10 R1 on 1st, when B2 hits a ground ball between 1st and 2nd. The ball strikes an Umpire standing behind F4 and deflects into foul territory, where it rolls under a fence.
- RULING: R1 is awarded 3rd. When a fair ball deflects off an Umpire and goes out of play, it entitles R1 to 2 bases from the time of the pitch. Rule 5.10.5 b) i. 6 a).
- Case 11 R1, running between 1st and 2nd, deflects a fair-batted ball, after it has passed a fielder, out of play in foul territory. The Umpire decides that no other fielder could have made an out on the batted ball.
- RULING: The Umpire should award both R1 and B2 2 bases from the time of the pitch.
Rule 5.10.5 b) i. 6. b)
- Case 12 R1 on 1st, when F1 pitches the ball to B2, who swings and misses. In an attempt to pick off R1 at 1st, F2 throws the ball into the outfield where it rolls under the fence and out of play. R1 scores easily.
- RULING: The ball is dead and R1 is awarded 3rd.
Rule 5.10.5 Effect b) ii.

- Case 13 With one out and R1 on 1st, B3 flies out to F9. In an attempt to retire R1, who left early, F9 wildly throws the ball into dead-ball territory, as R1 is heading back to 1st.
- RULING: R1 is awarded 3rd and the ball is dead. He may legally retouch 1st before advancing to 3rd.
Rule 5.10.5 Effect b) ii; 5.10.3 a) viii. Effect Exception
- Case 14 B7 hits a ground ball to F6, who makes a wild throw to F3. The ball hits a person standing in the opening of the fence leading to the dugout and rebounds into the playing field. Had the ball not hit that person, it would have gone "out of play".
- RULING: This person is in "out of play" territory, which means that the ball is out of play. As a result, B7 is awarded 2nd.
Rule 5.10.5 effect b) ii; 5.1.7 b).
- Case 15 R1 on 2nd and R2 on 1st, when B3 singles to F9. F9's throw to 3rd goes out of play with (a) both R2 and B3 between 1st and 2nd at the time of the throw, or (b) both R2 and B3 between 2nd and 3rd at the time of the throw. R1 scores in both situations.
- RULING: In (a) R2 is awarded 3rd and B3 awarded 2nd. When 2 runners are between the same bases, the award is based on the position of the lead runner. In (b) both R2 and B3 are awarded home.
Rule 5.10.5 Effect b) ii.
- Case 16 B5 hits to the infield and the throw to 1st is not in time. As B5 is returning to 1st, F3 returns the ball to F1. The throw is wild and the ball goes out of play.
- RULING: B5 is awarded 3rd. (Two bases from the last base held at the time of the throw).
Rule 5.10.5 Effect b) ii.
- Case 17 R1 on 1st with 2 out. B4 hits a fly ball to shallow right field and it is caught by F4. At the same time F9 collides with F4, causing him to drop the ball. The Umpire rules "No Catch", so B4 is not out. F4 retrieves the ball and throws to F5 but it goes off his glove and out of play. At the time of the throw (a) R1 has rounded 2nd heading for 3rd and B4 has rounded 1st heading for 2nd, or (b) R1 has not touched 2nd.
- RULING: In (a) R1 is awarded home and B4 awarded 3rd. In (b) R1 is awarded 3rd and B4 awarded 2nd.
Rule 5.10.5 b) ii; 5.1.9 d)
- Case 18 The field is entirely enclosed however the on-deck batter leaves the dugout gate open. B1 hits a ball to deep centerfield. As B1 is trying for 3B, F8 throws the ball over the head of the 3B person and the ball goes through the open dug out gate. The umpire calls Dead Ball and awards B1 home.
- Ruling: This is the correct ruling. The fact that the offensive player left the gate open does not change the fact that the defensive player threw the ball out of play. Rule 5.10.5 b) ii.
- Case 19 R5 on 1st. B6 hits a ground ball to F1, who fields and throws to F4 for the force. F4, trying to be smart, catches the ball in his cap and stands on 2nd before R5 arrives.
- RULING: R5 is not out but is awarded 3rd and B6 is awarded 2nd. The ball remains alive.
Rule 5.10.1 k) i; 5.10.5 Effect b) iv.

- Case 20 R1 on 1st, when F7 catches a foul fly on the run. R1, who legally tags up, advances to 2nd on the catch. F7 intentionally runs over the dead ball line with the ball (a) before, or (b) after, R1 touches 2nd.
- RULING: In (a) R1 is awarded 3rd. In (b) R1 is awarded home.
Rule 5.10.5 b) v.
- Case 21 B1 hits a long, fair ground ball down the left field line. The ball runs into foul territory and, just as F7 is about to field the ball, a spectator rushes onto the field and kicks the ball.
- RULING: This is interference by a non-team member. B1 becomes a batter-runner and should be awarded the number of bases the umpire considers he would have made had the interference not occurred.
Rule 5.10.5 e) i; 5.1.30 d); 5.5.1 i) i.
- Case 22 R1 on 1st, when B2 hits a fair ball down the left field line. Before F7 can field the ball, a policeman, who has been assigned to the game, picks it up and tosses it back to the infield.
- RULING: The ball is dead, when anybody other than a team member interferes with a fielder's opportunity to field a fair-batted ball. R1 and B2 would be awarded the base or bases they would have made, in the umpire's judgement, had the interference not occurred.
Rule 5.10.5 e) i; 5.1.30 d).
- Case 23 R4 is on 2nd, when B5 hits a long single to right field. F9 comes up throwing to F2 as R4 rounds third and heads for the plate. B5, on seeing the throw, advances toward 2nd. The throw is not a good one and F2 only manages to deflect the ball as he attempts to trap the errant throw. The deflected ball lands in the umpire's mask, being held in the hand, as he was adjusting his position after R4 had safely slid at the plate.
- RULING: As soon as the ball lodged in the umpire's mask, he should rule a dead ball. If, in the umpire's judgement, he considered that B5 could have advanced to 3rd on the deflected throw, then he should award B5 that base. If not, then B5 would remain at 2nd.
Rule 5.10.5 e) ii.
- Case 24 B1 hits a long fly ball over the head of F7, who throws his glove at the ball as it is heading toward the home run fence. The glove contacts the ball, knocking it to the ground. F7 recovers the ball and returns it to F5, who holds B1 at 3rd. The ball would have gone over the fence had the contact not been made.
- RULING: The Umpire should award B1 a home run.
Rule 5.10.5 Effect d) ii; 5.10.1 k) ii.

APP. 5 UMPIRES

A GENERAL INFORMATION FOR UMPIRES

- Case 1 Does one Umpire have the power to overrule another?
- RULING: No.
Appendix 5: A. i); 3.6.6 b)

- Case 2 Is it permissible for a Base Umpire to call an Infield Fly if he determines that the fly ball could easily be caught by a fielder in the infield?
- RULING: Yes. Although it is usually the Plate Umpire who determines and calls the Infield Fly, the Base Umpire may do so if it is apparent that the Plate Umpire is unsure.
Appendix 5: A. l) v.
- Case 3 R1, advancing to 3rd on a hit, misses 2nd. The Base Umpire notices this, so immediately calls R1 out.
- RULING: Unless appealed to, the Umpire does not call a player out or penalise them for having failed to touch base(s) as this is an appeal play.
Appendix 5: A. n).

SPORTAUS

Produced by
Softball Australia
Level 2, La Trobe Sports Stadium
La Trobe University
Melbourne Campus (Bundoora) Vic 3086
PO Box 107, La Trobe University Vic 3083
Ph: +61 3 9417 0022 Fax: +61 3 9417 3399